Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 940SH.
- For proper handset use, read "First Step Guide" in 940SH Starter Guide and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank Mobile services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 940SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes
- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents At A Glance

Notes

- ●Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with clamshell open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- ●Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- ●Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- ●Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- ●"(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.
- ●In this guide and on handset, "abroad" means "outside Japan" with regard to handset/service usage.

Accessory

■ **Battery (SHBCR1)**
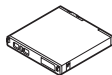
● For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).
● Use specified Charger or Headphones (each sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

⚠ **DANGER**	**Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ **WARNING**	**Risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ **CAUTION**	**Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use**

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

Prohibited	**Prohibited actions**
Do Not Disassemble	**Disassembly prohibited**
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	**Exposure to liquids prohibited**
Do Not Use Wet Hands	**Use with wet hands prohibited**

Compulsory	**Compulsory actions**
Disconnect Power Source	**Unplug Charger from outlet**

vi

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

⚠ DANGER

Use specified battery, Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (sold separately) only.

Compulsory

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

Do Not Disassemble

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.
Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not let liquid-exposed handset/related hardware remain wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc.; do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use handset and related hardware in an appropriate place properly.

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

Prohibited

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Compulsory

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; power handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Prohibited

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Compulsory

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, power handset off, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.

Prohibited

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.
Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or while charging.

🚫 Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.
Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.

❗ Compulsory

If your child is using handset/ related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
Misuse may cause injury, etc.

❗ Compulsory

Battery

⚠ DANGER

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.
Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.

🚫 Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

🚫 Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

🚫 Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.
Eyes may be severely damaged.

❗ Compulsory

⚠ WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.
May cause skin damage.

❗ Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.
Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

❗ Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.
Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.

❗ Compulsory

Keep battery away from pets.
Pet bites may cause battery to leak, burst, overheat, ignite, etc.

❗ Compulsory

⚠ CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.
Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

🚫 Prohibited

Handset

⚠ **WARNING**

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.
Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

🚫 Prohibited

CAUTION:
Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1
LED Product

herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.
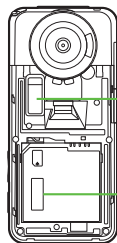
Mobile Light

CAUTION-CLASS 2
LED RADIATION WHEN
OPEN DO NOT STARE
INTO THE BEAM

■ Mobile Light LED Properties
a) Emission Duration: Continuous
b) Wavelength
 White: 400 - 700 nm
c) Maximum Emission Output
 White: 1.4 mW (4.8 mW inside handset)

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.
Accidents may result.
Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.

🚫 Prohibited

Power handset off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.
May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

❗ Compulsory

Power handset off before boarding aircraft to avoid radio waves from interfering with aircraft operation.
If mobile phone use is allowed on board, follow airline or cabin crew instructions regarding handset use.

❗ Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.
May cause heart damage.

❗ Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, power handset off; find cover.
There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

❗ Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.
Eyesight may be affected.

🚫 Prohibited

Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.
Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.

🚫 Prohibited

⚠ **CAUTION**

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.
Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.

🚫 Prohibited

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.
Metal and other materials (**P.17-18**) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

❗ Compulsory

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.
Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.

🚫 Prohibited

Do not swing handset by strap.
May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

🚫 Prohibited

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.
Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.

Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.
Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Prohibited

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.
May cause injury, breakage, etc.

Compulsory

Watch TV from a distance in good light.
Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.

Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.
Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Compulsory

Charger (Sold Separately)

⚠ **WARNING**

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.
Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.

Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.
Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.
● AC Charger (sold separately):
  AC 100V-240V Input
● In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only):
  DC 12V/24V Input
Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.
May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Disconnect Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).
Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.

Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.
May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.

Disconnect Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with dry cloth.
Fire may result.

Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.
May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.

Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/ Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).
May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.
May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.

Do Not Use Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.
May cause electric shock, etc.

Prohibited

⚠ **CAUTION**

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.
May cause electric shock, etc.

Disconnect Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.
Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.

Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.
May cause malfunction or injury.

Prohibited

Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder (sold separately) while it is connected to the outlet.
May cause burn injuries.

Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "**Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment**" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "**Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc.**" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

⚠ **WARNING**

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.
Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.

Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.
Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.

Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Power handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.
Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Compulsory

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back.
  Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures or direct sunlight.
- Malfunction resulting from misuse is not covered by the warranty.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with soft dry cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.

- Connect only specified products to External Device Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always power handset off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or power handset off while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.
- Do not use Desktop Holder (sold separately) inside vehicles. Vibration may damage handset, etc.

Bluetooth® Function

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from data/information leakage due to use of handset Bluetooth® function.

■ Precautions

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.

3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.
SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information
From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.17-42** "Customer Service."

● **Frequency Band**
This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet). It is not possible for the radio station to avoid using the frequency band of the mobile unit identification apparatus.

2.4FH1

Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)

Wireless LAN (hereafter "Wi-Fi") uses radio waves to enable communication between compatible devices, thus allowing connection to a local area network from anywhere within the range.
However, there is a risk of data interception unless security is established. It is advisable for the user to configure security settings on their own responsibility before using Wi-Fi.
● Do not use Wi-Fi near electrical appliances, audiovisual equipment or office automation equipment; may affect Wi-Fi transmission speed, availability, clarity, etc. (There is a possibility of interference especially when a microwave oven is in use.)
● The target access point may not be detected correctly if there are multiple access points nearby.

■ Precautions

The frequency band utilized by handset Wi-Fi is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").
1 Before using Wi-Fi, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or disable Wi-Fi immediately.
3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.
SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information
From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.17-42** "Customer Service."

● **Frequency Band**
This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with DSSS-OFDM modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 40 meters (131 feet).

2.4DS4/OF4

■ Simultaneous Use with Bluetooth®

Both Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11b/g) and Bluetooth® use the 2.4 GHz band. Therefore, Wi-Fi transmission speed, availability and clarity may be affected when Bluetooth® device is used near handset or when handset Bluetooth® is active. Should interference occur, discontinue use of the Bluetooth® device or cancel handset Bluetooth®.

● This handset supports Wi-Fi channels 1 - 13. Handset will not connect to access points set to other channels.
● Available channels vary by country.
● For use of Wi-Fi aboard aircraft, check with airline beforehand.
● In some countries/regions, such as France, there are restrictions on the use of Wi-Fi. If you intend to use Wi-Fi on the handset abroad, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV.
After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.16-7**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

● Mind your manners when using handset camera.
● Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
● Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

$C\epsilon0168\textcircled{!}$

In some countries/regions, such as France, there are restrictions on the use of Wi-Fi. If you intend to use Wi-Fi on the handset abroad, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 940SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.
Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.
As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide[*].
Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear[**]	On the Body
940SH	0.481 W/kg	0.446 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.
The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

[*]Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
[**]Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
  (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.
However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.
The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.
Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
940SH	APYHRO00108	0.305 W/kg	0.382 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software; do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.
See http://www.mpegla.com.
This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.
See http://www.mpegla.com for additional details.

Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.
RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.
Powered by JBlend™.
Copyright 1997-2009 Aplix Corporation.
All rights reserved.
JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.
Copyright© 2009 ACCESS Co., Ltd.
ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.
This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

940SH wireless LAN is based on the IEEE 802.11 standard and is "Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™" by the Wi-Fi Alliance®; interoperability with other devices with the Wi-Fi logo is guaranteed.
940SH is compatible with IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g standards.

b/g Wi-Fi CERTIFIED®

940SH employs Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS) which simplifies the wireless LAN security setup (SSID, authentication method, security key, etc.) by using the PBC method or PIN method.

Wi-Fi PROTECTED SETUP

Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, WPA®, WPA2® and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by MascotCapsule®.
Powered by MascotCapsule®/3DView package™.
MascotCapsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.
©2002-2009 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
🔁 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

ADOBE® FLASH® ENABLED

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Wakeup TV, VeilView, Smartlink, Simulated Call, AQUOS, AQUOS SHOT, Chase focus, Spinguru Menu, Pretty Arrange Camera and Animation View are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.

picsel®

Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies.
Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

xvii

- Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2009
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.
- Hot Pepper FooMoo is a registered trademark of Recruit Co., Ltd.
- Family Medical Encyclopedia ©Houken 2004
- Guide to Prescription Drugs ©Shigeru Kimura/ Iyakuseidokenkyukai 2008
- Yahoo! Answers ©Yahoo Japan

EUPHONY™ (a comprehensive sound enhancement system utilizing a virtual sound source processing technology) is a trademark of DiMAGIC Co., Ltd.

Dynamic Range Adjustment is based on iridix technology by Apical Limited.

Kanji Grabber™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid®, FaceSolid®, MovieSolid®, FrameSolid®, PhotoScouter®, TrackSolid®, StroboPhoto® and Morpho Effect Library™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

Handset employs Face Sensing Engine (FSE) developed by Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd. FSE and the FSE logo are trademarks of Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

AOSS™ is a trademark of BUFFALO Inc.

Chara Time and MOBILE KAKARICHO are registered trademarks of Primeworks.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

S! Application, S! GPS Navi, Mobile Widget, S! Quick News, S! Information Channel, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Near Chat, S! Addressbook Back-up, Weather Indicator, Double Number, Customized Screen, Video Call, Lifestyle-Appli, Input Memory, Decoration Call, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Graphic Mail, S! Mail, Feeling Mail, Ichi Navi, Sky Mail, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail and Secure Remote Lock are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

940SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.
These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).
All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 940SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.501 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
http://www.arib-emf.org/ (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

1

Getting Started

1

Parts & Functions

❶ **Light Sensor**
❷ **Earpiece**
❸ **Display/Touch Panel**
❹ **Microphone**
❺ **External Display**
❻ **Illumination Light**
❼ **Antenna (for TV reception)**
❽ **Strap Eyelet**
❾ **Infrared Port**
❿ **External Device Port (with Port Cover)**
⓫ **Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)**
⓬ **Charging Terminals**
⓭ **Internal Antenna Location**
⓮ **Camera (lens cover)**
⓯ **Speaker**
⓰ **Mobile Light**
⓱ 🎵 **Logo**
⓲ **Battery Cover**

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port/Slot Cover after Port/Slot use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

Display Positions

Clamshell Closed

Keep handset closed when not in use.

Clamshell Open
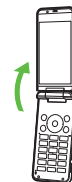
Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Viewer Position

Handset is closed with Display facing outward.
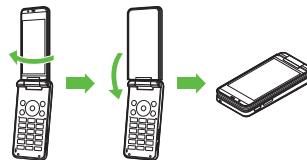
Do not carry handset with Display in Viewer position. Display may be damaged.

Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with * via Set Key Shortcut as needed.

1 **Multi Selector (right)** ⊙
Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel Infrared*.

2 **Multi Selector (up)** ⑤
Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu*.

3 **Center Key** ●
Open Main Menu.

4 **Multi Selector (left)** ⊙
Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth®*.

5 **Mail Key** ✉
Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window*.

6 **Shortcuts & A/a Key** ⑧
Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to show active indicators (Status Icon List).

7 **Clear/Back Key** ▦
Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

8 **Start Key** ☎
Open All Calls. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.

9 **Keypad** 0 - 9
Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.

10 **✳ Key** ✳
Enter ✳, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to activate/cancel Wi-Fi.

11 **Dictionary Key** 辞書
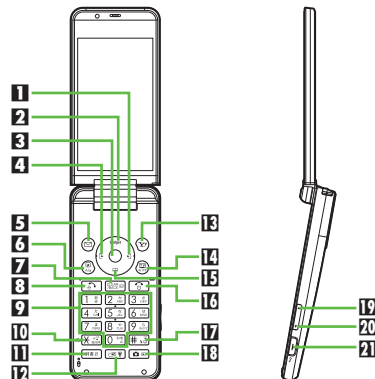Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate/ cancel VeilView.

12 **Multi Job & Manner Key** ☞
Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

13 **Yahoo! Keitai Key** ⓨ
Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote*.

14 **TV & Text Key** ⑧
Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.

15 **Multi Selector (down)** ⑨
Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries*.

16 **Power On/Off Key** ☎
Toggle Standby display. Long Press to power handset off.

17 **# Key** #
Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

18 **Camera Key** 📷
Activate mobile camera. Long Press to open Album.

Side Keys

19 **Volume Up Key** ◀
Closed: Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

20 **Volume Down Key** ▶
Open: Show/hide Softkeys.
Viewer: Show/hide Softkeys.

21 **Keypad Lock & Camera Key** ▭
Closed: Toggle Clock view. Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light.
Open: Long Press to activate mobile camera.
Viewer: Activate/cancel Keypad Lock. Long Press to activate mobile camera.

Multi Selector & Side Keys

- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press ⑤ or ⑨	⑤
Press ⊙ or ⊙	⊙
Press ⑤, ⑨, ⊙ or ⊙	⊛
Press ◀ or ▶	◀▶

Vector Pad

- Multi Selector touch sensor area. Adjust finger pressure to control scroll speed, or make circular motion for Spinguru Menu.

1

Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

Charging Battery Outside Japan
● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

AC Charger

Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only.
● In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
● Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.

External Device Port
AC 100V Outlet
Charger Connector
Illumination Light
Blades
Arrows
Port Cover
AC Charger
Release Tabs
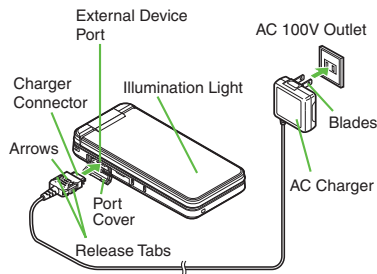
1 **Open Port Cover as shown**
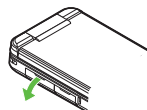
2 **Connect AC Charger**
● With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 **Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet**
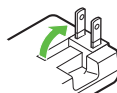
● Illumination Light (center LED) glows red while charging.
● Illumination Light goes out when battery is full.

4 **Unplug AC Charger**
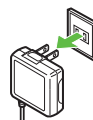
● Pull AC Charger straight out.

5 **Disconnect handset**
● Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

6 **Fold back blades and replace Port Cover**

When Illumination Light Flashes
● Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.
Important AC Charger Usage Note
● Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

USB Charge

Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

- Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
- Handset must be on to charge battery.
- Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes
- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

Cigarette Lighter Socket

Plug

External Device Port

In-Car Charger

Illumination Light

Charger Connector

Arrows

Port Cover

Release Tabs
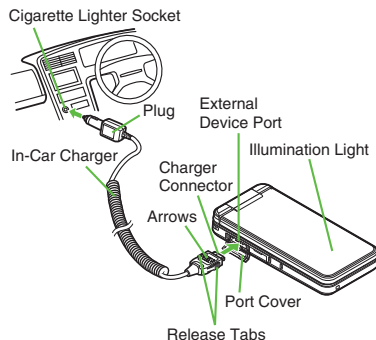
1 **Open Port Cover**

2 **Insert Charger Connector**
- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 **Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket**

4 **Start car engine**
- Illumination Light (center LED) glows red while charging.
- Illumination Light goes out when battery is full.

5 **Unplug Charger**

6 **Disconnect handset**
- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

7 **Replace Port Cover**

Advanced

1

Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 940SH for the first time:

1 🔛 **(Long)**
 ● After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.
 🔛 ➔ 🔛 ➔ ● ➔ 📞 ➔ ● ➔ *設定* ➔ ● ➔ *Language* ➔ ● ➔ *English* ➔ ● ➔ 🔛 (Long) ➔ 🔛 (Long) ➔ Change Menu window opens

2 **Select option** ➔ ●
 Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.
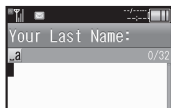
 Your Last Name:
 .a   0/32

 ● After Change Menu guidance, My Details setup starts.

3 **Enter last name** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter first name** ➔ ●
 ● Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 *Yes* or *No* ➔ ●

 何だその日は

 たくするクーポン   地域設定すると天気予報情報を取得できます

 【S!速報ニュースとは?】
 [S!速報ニュースとは?]

 OPEN

 --/--/--(---)   --:--
 ✉   MENU
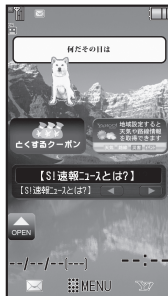
 Standby

 ● Choose *No* to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed
 ● *Insert USIM Card* appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when ●, 📞, ✉ or 🔽 is pressed for the first time.

 Get the latest provisioning and update?
 Yes
 No

Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

1 *Yes* ➔ ● ➔ **Retrieval starts**

2 ●

Power Off

1 🔛 **(Long)**
 ● After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Display

Standby
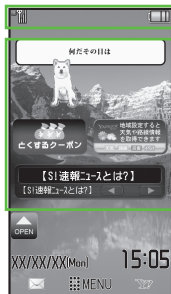
Indicator Area

Mobile Widgets

Hereafter, most screenshots omit Mobile Widgets and other icons.

Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

1 $\textcircled{\tiny{B}}$ **(Long)**

Check the state of battery and set the Mini Battery.

● Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
● Use $\textcircled{\tiny{$\diamond$}}$ to select indicators to view their descriptions.
● Press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to open menu/window (e.g., Battery Meter window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

Information

Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.

Information Window

Information label (e.g., *Message*, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to open it.

Opening Information List Manually
 $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Phone* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Information* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Clearing Information List
 $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Phone* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Information* ➡
 $\textcircled{\tiny{$\boxtimes$}}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

1

Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to ⊚, ● and ⓨ appear at the bottom of Display in portrait orientation with clamshell open.

Options   View   Multi Select

⊚   ●   ⓨ

Using Touch Panel

In clamshell open (landscape) or Viewer position, Softkeys (shown right) appear. Tap a Softkey to execute assigned function/operation. Some key assignments may vary with Display position/window content.

■ Portrait Orientation

TV   Phone   Settings
Customize   SH-web

■ Landscape Orientation

Tools   Data Folder   Widget   TV   Phone   Settings
Customize   SH-web
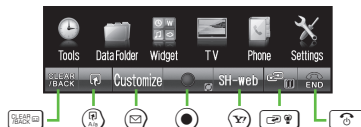
Display Saving

Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key (except 🔚 during a call) to activate it.

Backlight
- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press 0 - 9 to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).
- Display goes dark during a call. (Backlight does not turn off first).

Display Rotation

Sensor detects handset movement. In Viewer position, Display orientation changes with handset orientation. Display orientation for clamshell open is fixed by default; set to rotate as needed.
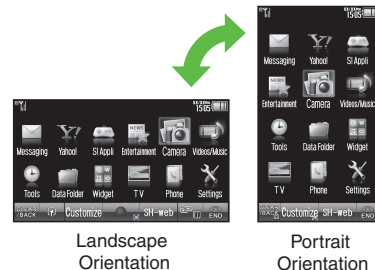
Landscape Orientation

Portrait Orientation

Indicators

Display Indicators

In Dual Mode, line type appears at bottom right of some indicators.

■ **Basic Status**

1	🔳	Within 3G range
	🔳	Within GSM range
	🏠	International roaming in progress
2	📶	Signal strength[1]
3	🔋	Battery strength[2]

[1]The more bars the better.
[2]Battery strength % (appears when Display activates, etc.) is an approximation.

■ **Function Status**

1	🎮	Active S! Application[*]
	🎮	Paused S! Application[*]
	🎵	Music playback in progress
	📹	TV recording in progress (handset)
	📹	TV recording in progress (Memory Card)
2	💾	Memory Card inserted
	💾	Accessing Memory Card
	💾	Reading Memory Card
	💾	Formatting Memory Card
	📺	TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
3	ⓘ	Compass Indicator
4	🎧	Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth®)
5	📋	Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

[*]Appears gold for some S! Applications (Real 3D Games, etc.)

■ **Notifications**

1	✉	Unread mail
	📧	Unread Delivery Report
2	📞	Answer Phone active & message recorded
	📞	Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3	📼	New Voicemail
4	➡	Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5	📲	S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
6	🔑	Contents Key received
7	📰	Unread S! Information Channel info
	🔄	Software Update result
	🗞	Unread S! Quick News info
8	📇	Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request

■ **Warnings**

1	✉	Mail memory low
2	📭	Message delivery failure
3	📵	Memory Card unusable/misinserted

1-9

1
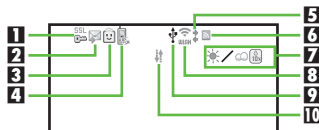
■ **Transmissions**

1	🔒	SSL browsing in progress[1]
	🌐	Packet transmission available
2	📩	Receiving mail
	📨	Sending mail
3	😊	S! Friend's Status online
	📡	Positioning in progress[2]
4	📶	Software Update in progress
5	↕	Wi-Fi transmission in progress
	📶	Keitai Wi-Fi available
6	📶	RSS-compatible site
7	☀	Weather Indicator
8	📶	Connected to Wi-Fi network[3]

9	♉	USB Cable connected
	♉	USB transmission in progress
	⬍	Infrared transmission in progress
	📄	Infrared file transfer in progress
	🅑	Bluetooth® transmission ready
	🅑	Bluetooth® transmission in progress (🅑 appears for multiple connections)
	🎧	Bluetooth® talk in progress
	📶	IC Transmission in progress
	⟳	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
	💻	PC Site Browser in use
	💻	Direct Browser in use
10	⬍	Infrared transmission ready

[1]Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.
[2]Flashes while positioning.
[3]The more blue bars the stronger the connection.

■ **Settings**
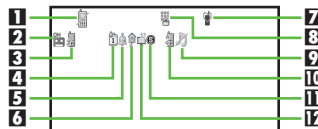
1	📴	Offline Mode active
2	📵	Answer Phone active
3	📳	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: **Always**)[*]

4	🗓	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
	🗓	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
5	⏰	Alarm set
6	🔔	Hour Minder active
7	📢	Manner mode active
	🚗	Drive mode active
	📋	Original mode active
	📄	VeilView active
8	⌨	Keypad Lock active
	🔒	IC Card Lock active
9	🔇	Ringtone (Silent)
	📳	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
	〜	Vibration active
10	📶	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
11	Ⓢ	Show Secret Data active
	📖	Function Lock active
12	📺	Wakeup TV set

[*]Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

External Display

View date/time and the following indicators with clamshell closed.

Activating Backlight

1 ⬚
  ● Press ⬚ to toggle view (panels).

Indicators

■ **Basic Status**

1 ┤Tₐₗ ▭▭▭ ├ **2**

| **1** | Signal strength* |
| **2** | Battery strength |

*The more bars the better.

■ **Notifications**

⃕	Missed Calls
⃕	Answer Phone message recorded
⃕	Missed Call Notification
⃕	New Voicemail
⊠	Unread mail
▤	Unread Delivery Report
✦ⴹ	Contents Key received
ⵙ	Unread S! Information Channel info
ⵗ	Weather Indicator update
ⴵ	Location Info request
ⵘ	Pedometer target achieved
ⵛ!	Videos/Music menu update
ⵓ!	S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
ⵚ	Unread S! Friend's Status notification

■ **Warnings**

ⵝ	Message delivery failure
ⴷˣ	S! Information Channel info reception failure
ⵞⴰ	Decoration Call transmission failure
ⵠ	IP Service connection failure
ⵡₓ	Weather Indicator update failure
ⵢ	Public wireless LAN auto authentication failure

■ **Handset Status**

ⴺ	Alarm
ⴺ	Schedule Alarm
ⵕ	Task Alarm
ⵖ	TV Alarm (watch)
ⵗ	TV Alarm (record)

Advanced

✎ ●Changing Backlight illumination time ●Changing Clock pattern ●Hiding new received messages ●Viewing new messages ●Checking e-money balance (And more on **P.1-12**)

Additional Functions

USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *USB Charge* ➡ ● ➡ *Disable* ➡ ●

External Display

■ View Settings

Changing Backlight illumination time	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Changing Clock pattern	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Clock Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select panel ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Changing Clock font	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Clock Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select panel ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Showing specified information below Clock	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Topic View* ➡ ● ➡ Select panel ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●

■ Handset Responses

Hiding new received messages	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Messages* ➡ ● ➡ *Not Display* ➡ ●
Hiding caller info	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Caller Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Selecting images for incoming calls, etc.	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *System Graphics* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ See below ● Customized Screens may be unsetable depending on item. **Preset Graphics** Select pattern ➡ ● **Customized Screen** *Customized Screen* ➡ ●

■ Operations

Viewing new messages	With Backlight off, ▭ ➡ ▭ ● Use ◀▶ to scroll message text; press ▭ to view next messages. ● Available with clamshell closed.
Checking e-money balance	With clamshell closed, ▭ (Long) ➡ Balance appears ➡ ▭ ➡ Balance disappears ● Use ◀▶ to view balances of listed entries. ● Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand. ● Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.

2

Basic Operations

Handset Interface

Handset Operations

Use handset keys, Touch Panel or Motion Control.

Handset Keys

Use Keypad, etc. with clamshell open; supports all handset operations.

■ **Vector Pad**
Multi Selector touch sensor area. Adjust finger pressure to control scroll speed, or make circular motion for Spinguru Menu.

Use center area for operations; using edges may inhibit cursor movement/scroll speed.

Touch Panel

Touch menu items, Softkeys or icons in clamshell open or Viewer position.

Motion Control

Move handset (e.g., shake it left or right, turn it over, etc.) to access functions, enlarge/reduce fonts or images, navigate functions, and more. (Complete setup beforehand.)
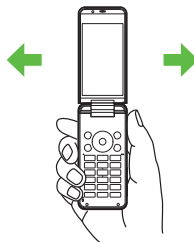
Viewer Position

Use handset in the following styles in Viewer position.

■ **Digital Camera & Portable TV**
Hold handset in landscape; press Keypad Lock & Camera Key to release shutter, or watch TV in widescreen.
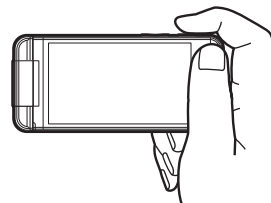
■ **Compact Touch Panel Device**
Intuitive Touch Panel interface supports most handset operations.

Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

Main Menu

Messaging Yahoo! S! Appli
Entertainment Camera Videos/Music
Tools Data Folder Widget

Repeat menu item selection.

Select menu items

Circle finger around Vector Pad

Use shortcuts

Spinguru Menu

Access recommended/frequently used functions or operation history, etc.

■Shortcuts

Shortcuts
:::: Menu List
1 ✉ Messaging
2 🌐 Bookmarks
3 🔍 Search
4 📷 Phone Book

Access assigned functions (changeable).

■Standby Shortcuts

Save functions to Standby.

■Quick Operations

Enter Number
📞 :Call
➕ :Calculator
💰 :Expenses Memo
📅 :Calendar
⏰ :Alarm
⏱ :CD Timer
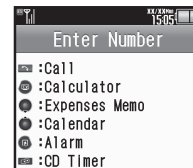
Enter numbers to access functions. To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.

Using Touch Panel

Touch Display to select menu items, open functions, scroll pages, etc.
Available in clamshell open or Viewer position (regardless of orientation).

Basic Operations

Tap

Tap item to open corresponding function; execute Softkey functions/operations.

■ **Double Tap**
Tap Display twice in rapid succession (within approximately 0.6 seconds).

Long Touch

Touch item for 1+ seconds to execute corresponding function/operation.

Drag

Touch Display and drag finger to move item or scribble/sketch; release finger when complete.

Swipe

Swipe a finger across Display to scroll.

Spread & Pinch
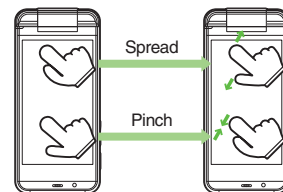
Spread

Pinch

Spread or pinch your fingers across Display to enlarge or reduce images, etc.

Advanced

2

Basic Operations

Operational Examples

Selection & Execution

Tap item to open or execute corresponding function/operation.

Tap *Data Folder*

The result is the same as selecting an item with 🕹 and pressing 🔘.

■ Two Taps

When corresponding Options menu is available, etc., tapping item may only select (highlight) it; tap the item again to execute function/operation.
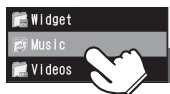
Tap *Music* twice

⬇
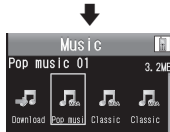
Music folder opens

Screen Scroll

To see items outside Display area, swipe a finger across Display in opposite direction.

Swipe right

⬇

Left portion appears
Alternatively, drag finger across Display.

Enlarge & Reduce

Spread or pinch your fingers across Display to enlarge or reduce images, etc.

⬇

Enlarged

- Double-tapping images, etc. may also enlarge/reduce them.
- On Internet page or before saving captured image, Long Touch area/portion to enlarge it.

Open Menus

Tap *Options* or Long Touch Display to open menu.

Long Touch Display

⬇

Menu opens

Important Touch Panel Usage Notes

- Touch Panel may not respond in these situations:
  - Use with gloved fingers/fingernails
  - Use of pens, pencils or other sharp objects
  - Use with objects placed on/against Display
- To prevent malfunctions, do not:
  - Touch Display with wet fingers
  - Subject Display to force/pressure
  - Place labels or stickers over Display
- Calibrate Touch Panel (**P.2-8**) to improve response.

Main Menu

2

Basic Operations

Opening Main Menu

■**Touch Panel**

MENU

■**Handset Key**
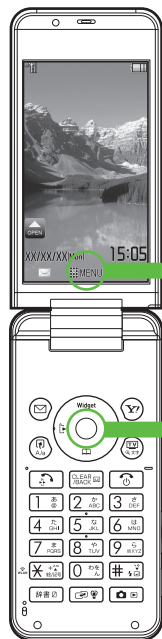
Window Description

Main Menu Items

Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Yahoo!	Browse the Internet
S! Appli	Use S! Applications including games
Entertainment	Receive news, play/download media files, etc.
Camera	Capture images or record video
Videos/Music	Access various media services
Tools	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
Widget	Use Mobile Widgets
TV	Watch/record TV programs
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

Follow these steps to open *World Clock* via handset keys or Touch Panel:
(Touch Panel navigation screenshots are based on Viewer position.)

Menu Navigation (Handset Keys)

Press ● in Standby

→

Use ⊕ to highlight *Tools*

→

Use ⊙ to select *Clock/Gauge* tab

Tools

●

→

Use ⊙ to select *World Clock*

●

→

World Clock

Tokyo

My Home City 15:05

20XX/XX/XX Mon

Tokyo

Your Other City 15:05

Open Main Menu

Select Item

Open Tab

Select Item

→

→

Tools

→

→

World Clock

Tokyo

My Home City 15:05

20XX/XX/XX Mon

Tokyo

Your Other City 15:05

Tap *MENU* in Standby

Tap *Tools*

Tap *Clock/Gauge* tab

Tap *World Clock*

Menu Navigation (Touch Panel)

2-7

2

Basic Operations

Escape/Return (Handset Keys)

Press [CLEAR/BACK] → Press [⌂] (Standby returns)

Tools
PIM/Life Clock/Gauge Doc/Rec Connect/Vfy
- ⏱ Stopwatch
- ⌛ Countdown Timer
- 🌏 World Clock
- 🕐 Hour Minder
- 🚶 Pedometer
- 🧭 Compass
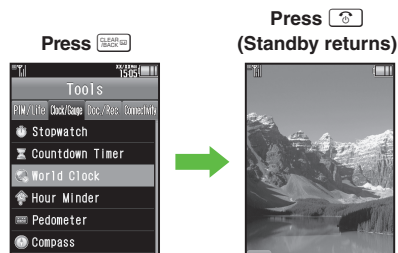
Navigate Back → **Return to Standby**

My Home City 15:05
20XX/XX/XX Mon

Tokyo
The Other City 15:05
20XX/XX/XX Mon

⌛ Countdown Timer
🌏 World Clock
🕐 Hour Minder
🚶 Pedometer
🧭 Compass
📡 S! GPS Navi
🔋 Battery Meter

Tap *CLEAR/BACK* → Tap *END* → Standby returns
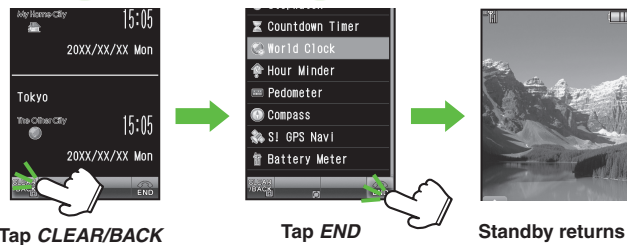
Escape/Return (Touch Panel)

Calibrating Touch Panel

Calibrate Touch Panel to improve response. Hold handset normally during calibration.

1 ● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Phone/*🖂

2 *Touch Panel* → ●

3 *Correct Touch Panel* → ●

Keypad Lock
Adjust touch point? Perform adjustment when viewer position.
[Yes]
[No]
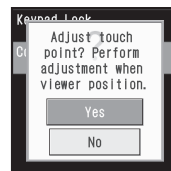
4 *Yes* → ●
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Undo Calibration
- If calibration does not improve response, follow these steps to restore default setting:
  After 4, [CLEAR/BACK]

2

Basic Operations

Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

● Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
● Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

■ Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Call Log, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call Voicemail, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Album, Scan Barcode, Scan Card, Kanji Grabber, Review
Convenient Tool	Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! GPS Navi, Pedometer, Compass, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
Data Folder	-
TV	-

Key assignments are largely the same as those in Standard Menu.

Activating Simple Menu

1 ⏺ **(Long)**
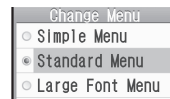
2 *Simple Menu* ➜ ●

While Using an Incompatible Function
● End the function before activating Simple Menu.
Canceling Simple Menu
⏺ **(Long)** ➜ *Standard Menu* ➜ ●

2-9

Spinguru Menu

2

Basic Operations

Basics

Circle finger around Vector Pad; keep moving finger to select functions suitable for time of day/situation, or frequently used/recently opened files/records, etc.

- Available in Standby and while using functions.
- Alternatively, make a circle on Standby Display to open Spinguru Menu; repeat motion for further operations.
- Alternatively, in Viewer position, Long Touch Softkey with 🔘 to open Spinguru Menu.

Spinguru Menu

- Spinguru Menu is available in landscape orientation as well.

Menu Description

Example: Spinguru Menu opened in Standby

Menu Settings

Indexes

Favorites

Main Menu

History
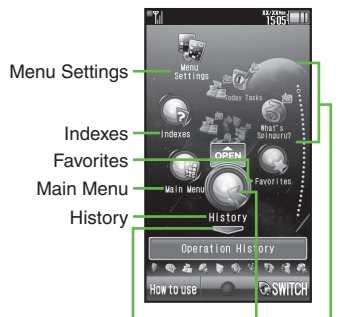
Lower Level/ Sub Menu Indicator

Selected Item RECOMMEND Items

- If Spinguru Menu is opened while using functions, corresponding menu items also appear.
- Favorites (gateway to frequently used functions) appears from the second day after the first use of handset.
- Press ✉ in Spinguru Menu to open operational instructions.

■ Menu Navigation

Press 🔽 when ➡ appears to access lower level/Sub Menu; press 🔼 (when ➡ appears) to return.

Open

Close

Lower level items added

Lower level opens   Sub Menu opens

Using Spinguru Menu

Opening Functions

General Items

1 **Circle finger around Vector Pad**
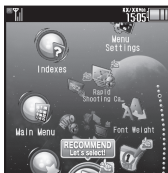
● Spinguru Menu opens.

2 **Circle finger further to select icon**

3 ⦿
● Menu/window opens.

Deleting Functions from Spinguru Menu
After 2, ⦾ ➔ *Delete Convenience*
➔ ⦿ ➔ *Yes* ➔ ⦿

Favorites & History

1 **In Spinguru Menu, select *Favorites* or *History* icon**

2 ⦾

● Lower level opens.

3 **Select icon**

4 ⦿
● Follow onscreen instructions.

Deleting Functions from Favorites or History
After 3, ⦾ ➔ *Delete from Favorites*
or *Delete from History* ➔ ⦿ ➔ *Yes*
➔ ⦿

Main Menu

1 **In Spinguru Menu, select *Main Menu* icon**

2 ⦾

3 **Select icon ➔ ⦿**
● Follow onscreen instructions.

2

Basic Operations

Indexes (Japanese)

Search for functions by initial character of terms or keywords.

1. **In Spinguru Menu, select *Indexes* icon**

2. ⊙
   ● Character icons appear.

3. **Select icon ➡ ⊙**
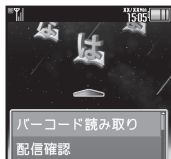
4. **Use ⊙ to select function ➡ ●**
   ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Spinguru Menu Settings

Follow these steps to reset Spinguru Menu:

1. **In Spinguru Menu, select *Menu Settings* icon**

2. ⊙
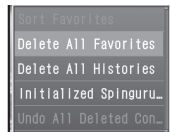
3. ***Initialized Spinguru Menu*** ➡ ●

4. ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Toggling View

Press ⓨ to toggle Spinguru Menu between linear and spiral views. In linear view, press ⊙ to access lower level items/Sub Menu; press ⊙ to return.
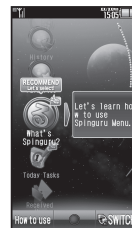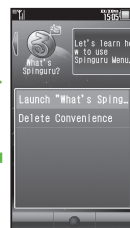
Spinguru Menu   Lower level/
(linear view)   Sub Menu opens

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing scroll speed ●Setting Spinguru Menu opening method ●Changing Spinguru Menu spin speed ●Calibrating Vector Pad (**P.2-26**)

2-12

Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut

Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1 ⓡ
A/a

Shortcuts
▦ Menu List
1 ✉ Messaging
2 🔖 Bookmarks
3 🔍 Search

Shortcuts Menu

2 Select function ➜ ●
• Menu/window opens.

Changing Default Shortcuts
In **2**, select numbered function ➜ ✉ ➜ *Assign Function* ➜ ● ➜ Select menu item ➜ ● ➜ Select new item ➜ ●
■ To assign menu items, select one and press ✉.

Assigning Files & Folders
In **2**, select numbered function ➜ ✉ ➜ *Assign Data* ➜ ● ➜ Select file/folder ➜ ●
■ For folders, select *Set this folder* and press ●.

Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press ✉, ✧ or ✓ to access assigned functions.

✉	Open S! Mail Composition window
✧	Open PC Site Browser menu
②	Create new Phone Book entries
⊙	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
⊙	Activate/cancel Infrared
✓	Activate Familink Remote

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to ✧ (Long Press):

1 ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Phone/✉*

2 *Set Key Shortcut* ➜ ●

Key Shortcut
Long press✉
Create Message
Long press✓
Familink Remote
Long press✧
PC Site Browser

Key Shortcut Menu

3 Long press✧ ➜ ●

Long press✧
From Appli
From Bookmark
From Other
Off
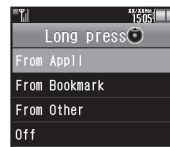
4 *From Appli* ➜ ●

5 *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ In PIM/Life menu, *Calculator* ➜ ●

Bookmark
In **4**, *From Bookmark* ➜ ● ➜ Select title ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●
Infrared, Show Secret Data, Etc. On/Off
In **4**, *From Other* ➜ ● ➜ Select item ➜ ●
Canceling Assigned Function
In **4**, *Off* ➜ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing item order ●Restoring default shortcuts (**P.2-26**)

Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

2

Basic Operations

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet

② Toggle windows

① Open Scratch Pad
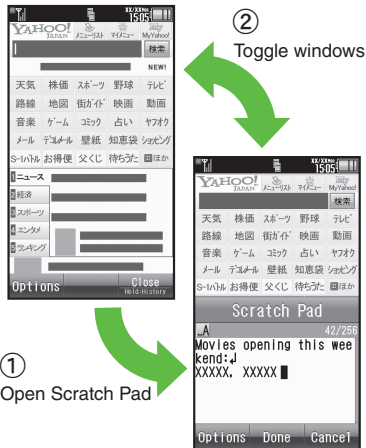
Jot down information

- Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows (e.g., ringtone/ringvideo selection, etc.).
- Multi Job is disabled while 🔒 (gold) appears.

Using Multi Job

1 In a function window, (🔊)
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press (🔊).

2 Select function ➡ ●

- Menu/window opens.

3 To toggle active windows, (📻)
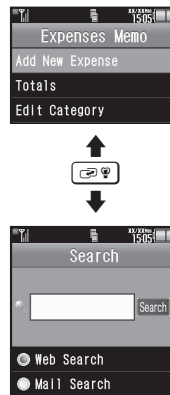
4 ☎ ➡ **Multi Job ends**
- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

2-14

Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access.

Saving Shortcuts to Standby

❶ $\overset{\circ}{\odot}$

❷ Use $\overset{\bullet}{\diamond}$ to select 📷 (OPEN) ➡ $\odot$

Widget Tab

Standby Shortcut Tab

❸ $\overset{\bullet}{\odot}$ 🎛

❹ Select item ➡ $\odot$
● Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
● **>>** appears when more items are available.

❺ Use $\overset{\bullet}{\diamond}$ to specify target location ➡ $\odot$

Saving from Menu/Window
● In Options menu, select **Set as StbyShortcut** (may not appear for some items); select sheet as needed.

Using Pointer
● After ❶, Long Press $\textcircled{y}$ to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc. (To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press $\textcircled{y}$.)

Using Shortcuts

❶ $\overset{\circ}{\odot}$ ➡ Use $\overset{\bullet}{\diamond}$ to select icon ➡ $\odot$
● Menu/window opens or command is executed.

Toggling Sheets

Toggle sheets to use Standby Shortcuts and widgets pasted on each sheet.

❶ $\overset{\circ}{\odot}$ ➡ $\textcircled{y}$
● To toggle further, press $\textcircled{y}$ or $\boxed{\text{⊡}}$.
● Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
● Save Standby Shortcuts as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Using Locked Sheets
$\overset{\circ}{\odot}$ ➡ Select 🔒 ➡ $\odot$ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ $\odot$

Removing Shortcuts from Standby

❶ $\overset{\circ}{\odot}$ ➡ Use $\overset{\bullet}{\diamond}$ to select icon ➡ $\textcircled{✉}$

❷ **Operation** ➡ $\odot$

❸ **Remove** ➡ $\odot$

❹ **Yes** ➡ $\odot$

Advanced

🔧 ●Sorting icons ●Moving icons ●Moving icons to front/back ●Removing icons at once ●Editing sheet names ●Locking sheets (**P.2-26** - **2-27**)

2-15

Motion Control

Sensor detects handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, access functions, etc.
- Cancel Keypad Lock and activate Display first. (Not necessary for activating Quick Silent.)
- Adjust Motion Control sensor (**P.2-28**) before using Motion Control for the first time.
- Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

Turn Over

Shake Left/Right

Open Quick Shortcut

Shake handset left and right approximately three times in Standby to access assigned functions.
- Change assigned functions as needed.

Re-search Signal
Portrait Orientation
Landscape Orientation
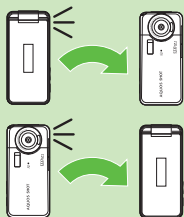
Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

Ringer
Incoming Calls, Alarms, etc.

Vibration
Incoming Calls, Alarms, etc.

- Some tones may not be silenced.
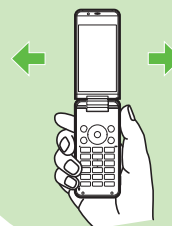
Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

Music
Music Player

Channels
TV

Images
Data Folder (Pictures)

Pages
Document Viewer

Multi Job

Shake to the left or right to toggle active windows.

Toggle Windows
Multi Job

2

Shake Forward or Backward
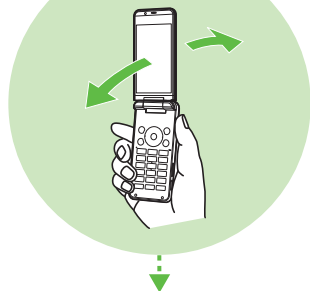
Zoom In/Zoom Out

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

Fonts
Yahoo! Keitai
Message Window

Zoom Image
Data Folder
(Pictures)

Zoom Page
PC Site Browser
Direct Browser
Document Viewer

Toggling Motion Control On/Off

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*🐾

2. *Motion Control* ➡ ●

> Motion Control
> Display Change
> Fixed at Open
> Quick Shortcut
> Off
> Action Settings
> Action Test
> Adjust Sensor
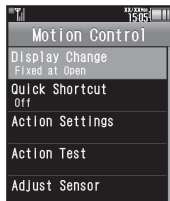
Motion Control Menu

3. *Action Settings* ➡ ●

4. Select function ➡ ●

5. *On* or *Off* ➡ ●

Enabling Quick Shortcut

1. In Motion Control menu, *Quick Shortcut* ➡ ●

2. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

3. *On* ➡ ●

Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily
Enter Handset Code ➡ **Shake handset left or right**

■ Close handset (clamshell closed) in Standby to cancel Show Secret Data.

Important Motion Control Usage Notes
● Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid unintended results.
● Motion Control may be unavailable while handset is ringing/vibrating.
● Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage. Do not shake handset roughly; handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing Display rotation method ●Changing Quick Shortcut items ●Deleting Quick Shortcut items ●Restoring default Quick Shortcut items
●Practicing Motion Control actions ●Adjusting Motion Control sensor (**P.2-27** - **2-28**)

Viewer Position Setup

Menu below appears the first time Display is rotated to Viewer position; set handset to automatically execute one of the following actions upon rotating Display to Viewer position:
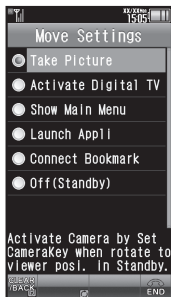
Viewer Position Menu

■ Actions

Take Picture	Activate mobile camera
Activate Digital TV	Activate TV
Show Main Menu	Open Main Menu
Launch Appli	Access assigned function
Connect Bookmark	Access saved URL
Off(Standby)	Keep Standby

1 **In Viewer Position Menu, tap item**

● Setting is applied and Viewer position setup option confirmation appears.

2 **Tap *Yes* or *No***

● Selection appears.

Take Picture

● In Photo Viewfinder, Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level. Follow these steps to turn setting off:

   [Photo Viewfinder] Tap *MENU* ➡ Tap *Mobile Light* twice ➡ Tap *Off* twice

Launch Appli or *Connect Bookmark*

● Handset accesses the assigned function or URL; change function/URL as needed.

From Standby

   ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖼* ➡ *Viewer Position* ➡ ● ➡ *Move Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●

Advanced

●Changing function assigned to Launch Appli in Move Settings ●Changing URL assigned to Connect Bookmark in Move Settings (**P.2-27**)

2-18

Activating/Canceling Keypad Lock

Activating

Prevent accidental operation/function activation in Viewer position.

1 **In Viewer position, ▭**
● Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates.

When Keypad Lock is Active
● Handset keys and Touch Panel are locked.

Canceling

Open handset (clamshell open). To cancel Keypad Lock in Viewer position, follow these steps:

1 **▭**
● Display activates.

2 **▭**
● Keypad Lock deactivates.
● Alternatively, swipe down on ▼*Unlock*.

Automatic Keypad Lock (Viewer Position)
● In Viewer position, Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates after a period of inactivity; follow the steps above to cancel it.

Advanced

●Canceling Keypad Lock upon Display activation ●Changing Keypad Lock cancellation method (**P.2-28**)

Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Power it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, buses, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1 🖃 **(Long)**

> Manner mode
> selected.

- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active
- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 940SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.
- To unmute Speaker temporarily while playing music, etc., follow these steps:
  During playback, 🔘 ➡ ● ➡ Yes or No ➡ ●

Canceling Manner Mode
🖃 **(Long)**

Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 ● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ 🔘 Network

2 Offline Mode ➡ ●

3 On ➡ ●

> Offline Mode
> ● On
> ● Off
>
> Offline Mode
> enabled.
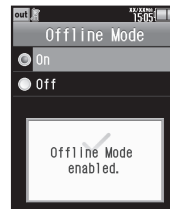
- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode
In 3, Off ➡ ●

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.
● Write down Security Codes.
● Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code	*9999* by default; use or change some functions
Administrator Code	*9999* by default; required for Reset Settings, Reset All, Direct Browser Lock, Proxy Setting, etc.
Center Access Code	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
Network Password*	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

*Change as needed.

Incorrect Code Entry
● Message appears for incorrect code entries; retry.
● If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Changing Security Codes

Enter four to eight digits.

Changing Handset Code

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📩

2 *Locks* ➡ ●

Locks
PIN Entry
Off
Function Lock
Off
IP Service Setting
On
Function Control
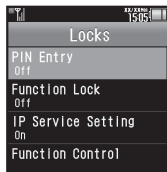
Locks Menu

3 *Chg. Handset Code* ➡ ●

4 **Enter current Handset Code** ➡ ●

5 **Enter new Handset Code** ➡ ●

6 **Re-enter new Handset Code** ➡ ●

● To change Administrator Code subsequently, choose *Yes* and press ●.

Changing Administrator Code

1 **In Locks menu,** *Administrator Setting* ➡ ●

2 *Change Administrator Code* ➡ ●

3 **Enter current Administrator Code** ➡ ●

4 **Enter new Administrator Code** ➡ ●

5 **Re-enter new Administrator Code** ➡ ●

My Details & Basic Tools

My Number

1 ● ➡ 0ｗａ

> Yamada
> Takako
> Tel/Email | Details | Settings
> 📞 090392XXXX5
> 📧 ccc@xxx.yyy
> ➡ <Add New Entry>
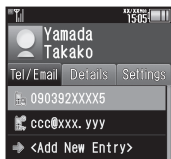
● Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Editing My Details
After ❶, ⊙ (select tab) ➡ Select item ➡ ⊻ ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ⊻

VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.

1 辞書⊘ (Long)

Canceling VeilView
辞書⊘ (Long)

Pen Light
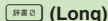
1 **With clamshell closed, ▭ (Long)**
● Mobile Light illuminates.

2 **Side Key ➡ Mobile Light goes out**

Important Pen Light Usage Note
● Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.

Battery Meter

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge*

2 *Battery Meter* ➡ ●
● Approximate battery strength appears.

Battery Strength %
● *100%* may not appear even when battery is full. This is by design; not a malfunction.

Phone Help

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.*

2 *Phone Help* ➡ ●

3 Select item ➡ ●
● For *Indicators*, select category and press ●.

Advanced

📱 ●Clearing My Details ●Selecting My Details items to send ●Toggling My Details in Dual Mode ●Changing battery strength indicator pattern
●Changing VeilView pattern/density (**P.2-28** - **2-29**)

Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

● Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
● Outside Japan, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
● For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses

Line A		Line B
Phone Number A		**Phone Number** B
090392XXXX7	SH	090392XXXX8
Mail Address A		**Mail Address** B
○○○@softbank.ne.jp		△△△@softbank.ne.jp

Modes

Select from three usage modes:

A Mode	B Mode	Dual Mode
(Line A* only)	(Line B* only)	(both accounts)

*Callers to the other line hear a busy tone; messages are received without alerts.

Account Memory Management

While one line is active, call/messaging records for the other do not appear.

Phone Book Entries	Call Log Records	Messaging Folders

● Customize Wallpaper, incoming call graphic, ringtone, vibration, etc. by account.

Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/☺*

2. *Double Number* ➡ ●

3. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

4. *On* ➡ ●

5. Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Double Number
In ④, *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⑤

● When Double Number is canceled:
  ■ Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
  ■ Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
  ■ Double Number account is not affected.

Modes

Activate *A Mode* to use Line A only, *B Mode* to use Line B only, or *Dual Mode* to use both accounts.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only
● Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions
● Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
● When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only
● Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions
● Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
● S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.

Advanced

🖱 ●Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes ●Renaming Double Number modes ●Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line ●Hiding Internet connection confirmation (**P.2-29**)

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">**Dual Mode**</td><td colspan="3">**Receive Calls to Both Accounts**

● Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.</td></tr>
<tr><td>**Phone Book Entries**
Specify A, B or Dual.</td><td>**Messaging**
Select Line A or Line B. Sender Address changes accordingly.</td><td>**Calling**
Select Line A or Line B. Caller ID changes accordingly.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="3">● Line type indicators appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.</td></tr>
</table>

Switching Modes

1 🔄 **(Long)**

2 **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

3 **Select mode** ➡ ●
● For *B Mode*, a confirmation appears.

4 *Yes* ➡ ●

In Dual Mode

During an operation, if prompt window below appears, select a line and press ●.

    A Line A
    B Line B
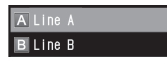
If customizable by line, line indicator appears bottom right; press ⓨ to switch.

    ⟶B

If line selection is otherwise required, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

👆 ●Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode ●Setting main line for Dual Mode (**P.2-29**)

Touch Panel

Adjusting Touch vibration	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📺 ➡ *Touch Panel* ➡ ● ➡ *Touch Reaction* ➡ ● ➡ See below
Touch Vibration Off in Manner Mode	
On(Except Manner Mode) ➡ ●	
Touch Vibration Always Off	
Off ➡ ●	

Spinguru Menu

Sorting Favorites items	Open Spinguru Menu ➡ Select *Menu Settings* icon ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Sort Favorites* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting all Favorites items	Open Spinguru Menu ➡ Select *Menu Settings* icon ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Delete All Favorites* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting all History items	Open Spinguru Menu ➡ Select *Menu Settings* icon ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Delete All Histories* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Restoring deleted general items	[Start Here] Open Spinguru Menu ➡ Select *Menu Settings* icon ➡ ⊙ ➡ See below
All Items	
Undo All Deleted Convenience ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●	
One Item	
Select *Undo XX* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●	
Changing scroll speed	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📺 ➡ *Vector Pad Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Speed* ➡ ● ➡ Select speed ➡ ●

Setting Spinguru Menu opening method	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📺 ➡ *Vector Pad Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Launch Spinguru Menu by* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ●
Changing Spinguru Menu spin speed	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📺 ➡ *Vector Pad Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Jog Speed* ➡ ● ➡ Select speed ➡ ●
Calibrating Vector Pad	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📺 ➡ *Vector Pad Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Correct Vector Pad* ➡ ● ➡ ⓪ (Long)

Shortcuts

Changing item order	⑨ ➡ Select numbered function ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Restoring default shortcuts	⑨ ➡ Select numbered function ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Standby Shortcut

■ Operations in Standby

Sorting icons	⑤ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Sort Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● • Widgets may also be sorted depending on the size.
Moving icons	⑤ ➡ Use ⊕ to select icon ➡ ✉ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Layout* ➡ ● ➡ Specify target location ➡ ●

Moving icons to front/back	$\overset{\circlearrowleft}{\circlearrowright}$ ➡ Use $\overset{\circlearrowleft}{\leftrightarrow}$ to select icon ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$ ➡ *Operation* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *To Front* or *To Back* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Removing icons at once	[Start Here] $\overset{\circlearrowleft}{\circlearrowright}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$ ➡ *Operate from List* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Remove* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	All Icons *Remove All* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Shortcut* ➡ Select sheet ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize Y}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Selected Icons *Select & Remove* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Shortcut* ➡ Select icon ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ($\boxed{\checkmark}$) ➡ Complete selection ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize Y}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

■ Sheets

Editing sheet names	[Start Here] $\overset{\circlearrowleft}{\circlearrowright}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Sheet Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Change Sheet Name* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	Renaming Select sheet ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Enter name ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Resetting All Sheet Names $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Locking sheets	[Start Here] $\overset{\circlearrowleft}{\circlearrowright}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Sheet Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Set Sheet Lock* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	Activating Lock Select sheet ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *On* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Changing Method for Temporary Access *Unlock Method* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *No Password* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ● Press $\overset{\circlearrowleft}{\circlearrowright}$, then select $\boxed{\text{🔒}}$ and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to unlock sheet temporarily.

Viewer Position Setup

Changing function assigned to *Launch Appli* **in Move Settings**	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Phone/*🖥 ➡ *Viewer Position* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Set Appli* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select menu item ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select new item ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Changing URL assigned to *Connect Bookmark* **in Move Settings**	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Phone/*🖥 ➡ *Viewer Position* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Set Bookmark* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select title ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

Motion Control

Changing Display rotation method	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Phone/*🖥 ➡ *Motion Control* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Display Change* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select method ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Changing Quick Shortcut items	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Phone/*🖥 ➡ *Motion Control* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Quick Shortcut* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Shortcut Entry* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Portrait* or *Landscape* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select menu item ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select new item ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ● To assign menu items, select one and press $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$.
Deleting Quick Shortcut items	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\overset{\curvearrowright}{\leftrightarrow}$ *Phone/*🖥 ➡ *Motion Control* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Quick Shortcut* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Shortcut Entry* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Portrait* or *Landscape* ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0pt}{✉}}$ ➡ *Delete* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

2

Basic Operations

2-27

2

Basic Operations

Restoring default Quick Shortcut items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖬* ➡ *Motion Control* ➡ ● ➡ *Quick Shortcut* ➡ ● ➡ *Shortcut Entry* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Practicing Motion Control actions	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖬* ➡ *Motion Control* ➡ ● ➡ *Action Test* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting Motion Control sensor	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖬* ➡ *Motion Control* ➡ ● ➡ *Adjust Sensor* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. ● Avoid adjusting sensor near metal/magnetic objects or aboard trains or in vehicles.

Keypad Lock

Canceling Keypad Lock upon Display activation	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖬* ➡ *Touch Panel* ➡ ● ➡ *Keypad Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Keypad Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Simple Lock* ➡ ●
Changing Keypad Lock cancellation method	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖬* ➡ *Touch Panel* ➡ ● ➡ *Keypad Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Keypad Unlock* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ●

Mode

Changing handset modes	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Selecting a Handset Mode Select mode ➡ ●
	Customizing Handset Modes Select mode ➡ ✉ ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust settings ● Not available for Normal mode.
Creating a custom mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Original* ➡ ✉ ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust settings
Resetting Mode Settings	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ⊙ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

My Details

Clearing My Details	● ➡ ⓪ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Reset My Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Selecting My Details items to send	● ➡ ⓪ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Send Items* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⊙
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	● ➡ ⓪ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Switch to B* or *Switch to A* ➡ ●

2

Battery Meter

Changing battery strength indicator pattern	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Mini Battery* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ● Battery strength (shown as a percentage) is for reference only.

VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *VeilView* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Pattern *Pattern Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select scale or *Animation* ➡ ●
	Density *Density Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select density ➡ ● ● Not available when pattern is set to *Animation*.

Double Number

■ All Modes

Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✆ *Phone/*📧 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Password Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Renaming Double Number modes	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✆ *Phone/*📧 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Mode Name* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Select icon ➡ ●

■ A Mode & B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✆ *Phone/*📧 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Missed* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✆ *Phone/*📧 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Packet Warning* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● Available for B Mode.

■ Dual Mode

Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✆ *Phone/*📧 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject By Line* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Setting main line for Dual Mode	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✆ *Phone/*📧 ➡ *Double Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Changing Font Size

Universal Operations, Etc.

3

Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:

```
          Shortcuts
    ⠿ Menu List
  1️⃣✉ Messaging
  2️⃣🔖 Bookmarks
  3️⃣🔍 Search
  4️⃣📇 Phone Book
  5️⃣📁 Data Folder
  6️⃣💳 Scan Card
```

1️⃣ 🖂 **(Long)**

```
        Change Menu
    ○ Simple Menu
    ◉ Standard Menu
    ○ Large Font Menu
```
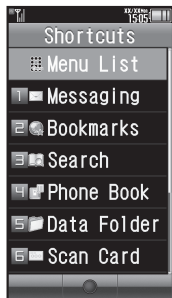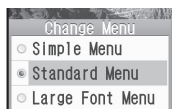
2️⃣ *Large Font Menu* ➜ ◉

Canceling Large Font Menu
  In 2️⃣, *Standard Menu* ➜ ◉

Customizing Font Sizes

1️⃣ ◉ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ◉

```
          Settings
Sound/  Phone📶  Call  Network
Display
  🔧 Mode Settings
  🖵 Display
  🎨 Customized Screen
  🔔 Sounds & Alerts
  🕐 Date & Time
```

2️⃣ **In Sound/Display menu,**
   Display ➜ ◉

3️⃣ *Font Settings* ➜ ◉
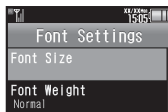
```
       Font Settings
  Font Size
  Font Weight
  Normal
```
Font Settings Menu

4️⃣ *Font Size* ➜ ◉ ➜ **Select**
   item ➜ ◉

5️⃣ **Select size** ➜ ◉

Changing Font Weight

1️⃣ **In Font Settings menu,** *Font*
   Weight ➜ ◉

```
        Font Weight
    ● Thin
    ◉ Normal
    ● Bold
```

2️⃣ **Select weight** ➜ ◉

3-2

Wallpaper

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ●

2. *Wallpaper* ➡ ●

3. *Vertical* or *Horizontal* ➡ ●

Wallpaper Menu

4. Select folder ➡ ●

5. Select file ➡ ●
   - Some files may not be usable.
   - Omit the next step when *Preset Pictures* is selected in 4.

6. ●

Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display
   After 5, select option ➡ ● ➡ ●
   - For *Centered*, use 🔄 to zoom in/out or press 🗊 to rotate.

Downloading Images via Yahoo! Keitai
   In 4, *Search by Y! Keitai* ➡ ●
   - Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period
   - A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:
     Yes ➡ ● ➡ ●

If Double Number Mode Menu Opens
   Select mode ➡ ●

Selecting Chara Time Files
   In 4, *Chara Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ●
   - If a confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby. Some images may not appear.

1. In Wallpaper menu, *Slide W paper* ➡ ●

2. *Folder Setting* ➡ ●

3. *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➡ ●

4. Select sub folder ➡ ● ➡ *Set this folder* ➡ ●
   - Omit steps for sub folder if none.

If There is No Image in Set Folder
   - Preset images appear.
Using Preset Images
   In 3, *Preset Pictures* ➡ ●
Changing Pattern
   In 2, *Pattern Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
   - To check patterns, select one and press 🗊.

Customized Screen (Japanese)

Preset Customized Screens

1. ● ➡ @
2. *Preset Screens* ➡ ●
3. Select pattern ➡ ●
4. ● ➡ ●

When Selected Customized Screen is Active
- Cancellation confirmation appears after ❸. To cancel, choose *Yes* and press ●.

Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ●

Customized Screen Menu

2. *Download Customized Screen* ➡ ●
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup

1. In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen ➡ ●

2. ● ➡ ●

Applying Fee-based Customized Screen
- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
  After ❶, ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
  - Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Customizing Handset Responses

Ringtones

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●

```
Sounds & Alerts
Volume
Ringtone/videos
Machi-Uta
System Sounds
```
Sounds & Alerts Menu

2. *Ringtone/videos* ➡ ●

3. Select item ➡ ●
   For *For New Message*, etc., select *Assign Tone* and press ●.

```
For Voice Call
Preset Sounds
Ring Songs・Tones
Music
Videos
Flash® Ringtones
Customized Screen
```

4. Select folder ➡ ●

5. Select tone/file ➡ ●

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.
After ③, *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions
In ④, *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
● After ⑤, start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:
   Select start point ➡ ●
Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to proceed.

Machi-Uta Service Registration (Japanese)

Use Machi-Uta to play music instead of the standard ringback tone.
Machi-Uta requires a separate contract.

1. In Sounds & Alerts menu, *Machi-Uta* ➡ ●

2. *Register/Cancel* ➡ ●
   ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Vibration

1. In Sounds & Alerts menu, *Vibration* ➡ ●

2. Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

3. *On* ➡ ●

4. *Vibration Pattern* ➡ ●
   ● To check vibration patterns, select one and press ✉.

5. Select pattern ➡ ●

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration
In ③, *Link to Sound* ➡ ●
Important Vibration Usage Note
● Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Advanced

🖐 ●Using Machi-Uta (Japanese) (**P.3-21**)

Text Entry

Use handset keys or Touch Panel to enter text.

Handset Keys

- Toggle Case
- Quick Conversion
- Switch Entry Modes
- Kanji Conversion
- Delete Character
- Keypad
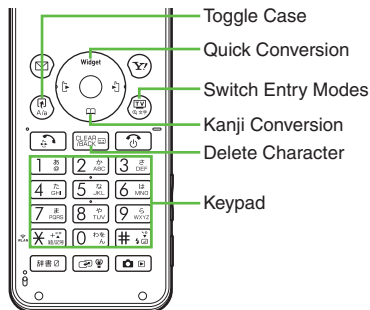
Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows using handset keys.

Touch Panel

Use Onscreen Keyboard to enter text.
- Onscreen Keyboard keys correspond to Keypad keys.
- Onscreen Keyboard appears when a text entry window is opened in Viewer position.

- Onscreen Keyboard
- Function Keys
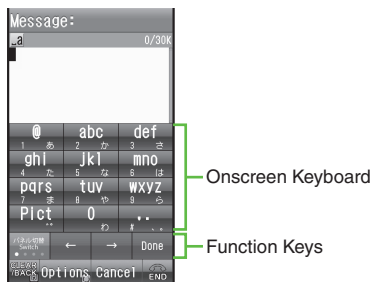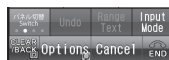
Tap *Switch*

- Tap *Switch* at the bottom to toggle Function Key assignments.

Function Key Assignments

Input Mode	Switch entry modes
A/a	Toggle case
Conv	Convert hiragana to kanji
Conf.	Enter current characters
Rev. Order	Reverse character options
Undo	Undo conversion/deletion
Emoticons	Open emoticon list
Search Word	Enter text from dictionaries
Prev.	Open previous page
Next	Open next page
Common Pict	Show cross-carrier Pictograms
All Pict	Show all Pictograms
Quick Conv	Initiate Quick Conversion
Pred. Mode	Toggle suggestion mode
←/→	Move cursor left/right
Range Text	Highlight text range
Quit	Cancel Range Text
Copy	Copy highlighted text
Cut	Cut highlighted text.
Del. All	Delete all characters
Dict.	Use dictionaries
Done	End text entry
Keyboard	Show/hide Keyboard

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Switching Entry Modes

❶ 🖳

Input Mode
○ アイウ
○ アイウ
○ A b c
⦿ Abc
○ 123
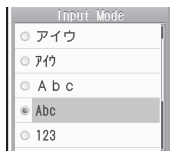
● Available entry modes appear.

❷ **Select mode ➜ ●**
 ● Entry Mode Indicators:

あ*	Kanji (hiragana)
ア / ⽇	Double/single-byte katakana
A / a	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
A / a	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
1	Single-byte number
⨯	Character Code

* 予 appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key.
Press a key to toggle character options for that key.
Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press ⒈ three times.

⒈　　　　⒈　　　　⒈
██ ➜ ア ➜ イ ➜ ウ

● Press ⬆ to toggle options in reverse.
To type characters assigned to the same key, press ⟳ first.
Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.

6 6　　　⟳　　　6 6 6
██ ➜ n ➜ n██ ➜ no

● Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.

6 6　6 (Long)　6 6 6
██ ➜ n ➜ n██ ➜ no

Advanced

ᔍ ●Opening Help ●Using Character Codes ●Using Pager Code (**P.3-21**)

3-7

Entering Characters

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずき** in kanji (hiragana) mode:

1 ③③③ (**す**) ➡ ⊙ ➡
③③③ (**す**) ➡ ✳ (**ず**)
➡ ②② (**き**)

Message:
すずき

2 ● (Confirm)

Kanji

Convert **すずき** to **鈴木**.

1 Type **すずき**

Message:
すずき

- In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana are typed. (Predictive)
- Long Press 🔘 to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male, Female and Automatic. (Personal Mode)

2 ◉

Message:
鈴木

3 **鈴木**

- To exit suggestion list, press 🔙.

4 ●

Message:
鈴木

| Prev. Usage

さん	の	は	が
様	に	と	君	も
くん	さま	で	氏
殿	ちゃん	チャン
を	や	だ	です
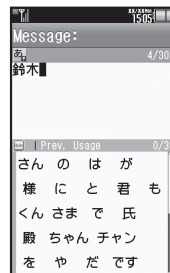
- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed
- Press ◙ or ⓨ to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  - Press ⓨ to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

Single Kanji Conversion
  Type reading in hiragana ➡ ⓨ (Long)

Advanced

📖 ●Inserting line breaks ●Inserting spaces ●Clearing entry log ●Changing Font Size ●Disabling suggestions based on entered characters ●Disabling suggestions based on entered words ●Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words ●Lowering type priorities in suggestion list ●Selecting a suggestion mode (**P.3-21** - **3-22**)

Entering from Dictionaries (Search Word)

Enter text by referring to word definitions, translations, etc.

1 **Type hiragana ➡ Before pressing ● to complete entry, 🔤**

明鏡モバイル国語 ●Switch Dict.
けいたい [形態]
けいたい [敬体]
けいたい [携帯]
けいたいでんわ [携帯電話]

Prev.　Preview　Next
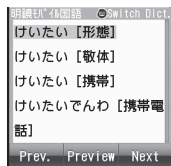
● Press 🔤 to toggle dictionaries.

2 **Select word, etc. ➡ ●**

● Definition/translation appears.

3 **●**

One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.
Example: **すずき** was previously converted to **鈴木**.

1 **3DEF3DEF3DEF (す) ➡ ⊙**

2 **Select word/phrase ➡ ●**

Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter **ジュン**:

1 **🔤 ➡ アイウ ➡ ●**

Message:
ア
0/30K

2 **3DEF3DEF (シ) ➡ ✳️ (ジ) ➡ 8TUV8TUV (ユ) ➡ 🔤 (ュ) ➡ 0わをん0わをん0わをん (ン) ➡ ●**
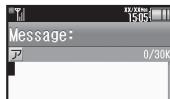
Message:
ア
6/30K
ジュン

Pictograms & Symbols

May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1 **✳️**

● Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 **✳️ or #.@ (switch tabs) ➡ ✉️ or Y⌄ (toggle Lists)**

◄ 🔲 Common My Pict Symbols 🔲 ►
　　　 ●All

😊 😌 😆 😅 😥 😓
😊 😌 😆 😅 😥 😓
😊 😌 😆 😅 😥 😓
♡ 💗 ❗ ♪ ♪♪ …
🐝 🐛 🐒 🐌 🐙 ◆

Log1　　　　　　Pict 2

● In Pictogram List, press 🔤 to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

3 **Select Pictogram or Symbol ➡ ●**

● Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 **CLEAR/BACK ➡ List closes**

Emoticons

1 $\circledcirc$ ➡ *Emoticons* ➡ $\bullet$

2 Select emoticon ➡ $\bullet$

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method
● In kanji (hiragana) mode, type かお or a descriptive word such as わーい or うーん, then convert the entry.

EmoticonWordLink
● Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as 嬉しい or 悲しい, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter *.co.jp*, *http://*, etc., easily.

1 $\circledcirc$ ➡ *Quick Addr. List* ➡ $\bullet$

Quick Address List
01 @softbank.ne.jp
02 @ezweb.ne.jp
03 @docomo.ne.jp
04 @d.vodafone.ne.jp

2 Select extension ➡ $\bullet$
● Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.
Example: To enter *PM*
Use key inscriptions.

1 $7_{PQRS}^{\,\circ}$ $6_{MNO}^{\,\circ}$ ➡ $\mathbb{Y}$

Message:
マパ
0/30K

| Kanaei | | Dict. 1/18 |
マパ ヲパ 76 76
PM PM Pm Pm
pm pm 7月6日 7/6
7時6分 7:06 7月6日
7／6 7時6分
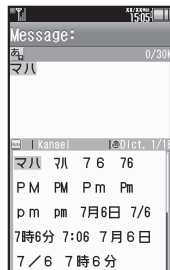
2 Select word/phrase (*PM*) ➡ $\bullet$

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.
Example: To enter *終電*

1 $3_{DEF}^{\,\circ}$ (さ) ➡ $8_{TUV}^{\,\circ}$ (や)
➡ $1_{\cdot@}^{\,\circ}$ (あ) ➡ $4_{GHI}^{\,\circ}$ $\divideontimes_{細小切}^{+\because}$ (だ)
➡ $0_{\cdot\cdot}^{\,\circ}$ (わ) ➡ $\circledcirc$

Message:
終電
0/30K

| OneTouch | | Dict.10/10
小伝 生田 正田 昇段
商談 集団 焦土を
正田を 照度を 終電

2 Select word/phrase (*終電*) ➡ $\bullet$

One Hiragana Word Call
● Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press $\circledcirc$.

Universal Operations, Etc.

3

Editing Characters

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また。お願いします** to **また明日お願いします**:

1 **Select character**

![screen showing Message: また█お願いします 18/30K]

2 CLEAR/BACK

![screen showing Message: また█願いします 16/30K]

● The highlighted character is deleted.

3 **Select target location ▶ Enter characters**

![screen showing Message: また明日█願いします 20/30K]

Recovering Deleted Characters
● Press 🔅 once for each character after deletion.

Deleting All Text
● Long Press CLEAR/BACK at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press CLEAR/BACK.

Jumping to the End or Top of Text
  ☺ ▶ *Cursor Position* ▶ ● ▶ *Jump to End* or *Jump to Top* ▶ ●

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 ☺ ▶ *Cut* or *Copy* ▶ ● ▶ **Select first character ▶ ●**

![screen showing Cut お願いします また明日 20/30K]

Cut

● To cancel and start over, press ⊙.

2 **Highlight text range ▶ ●**

3 **Select target location ▶ ✳ (Long)**

![screen showing Message: また明日お願いします 20/30K]

● Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text
  Select target location ▶ ☺ ▶ *Paste* **▶ ● ▶ Select text ▶ ●**
  ■ Available when Paste List appears.

Advanced

🔅 ●Undo conversion or recover deleted characters ●Inserting Phone Book entry items (**P.3-21**)

Saving Frequently Used Words

Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*🖂 ➡ *User Dictionary* ➡ ●
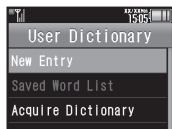
User Dictionary Menu

2 *New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter word ➡ ●

3 Enter reading ➡ ●

Editing Entries
In **2**, *Saved Word List* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Edit reading ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

940SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Get specialized 940SH Download Dictionaries via SH-web Mobile Internet site (シャープ メーカー サイトSH-web in Bookmarks; see **P.6-9**).
Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.
Some dictionary files may not be usable.

1 In User Dictionary menu, *Acquire Dictionary* ➡ ●
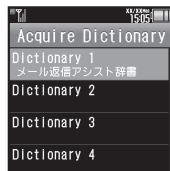
2 Select number ➡ ● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●

● Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary
In **2**, select dictionary ➡ ✉ ➡ *Cancel* ➡ ●
Viewing Dictionary Information
In **2**, select dictionary ➡ ✉ ➡ *Info* ➡ ●
Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)
● When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words in suggestion list.
● Effective in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Advanced

👆 ●Deleting entries (**P.3-22**)

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Using Dictionaries (Japanese)

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries *	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries	Yahoo! Answers, Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese/Japanese-English Dictionaries, Hot Pepper FooMoo, Amazon.co.jp, Family Medical Encyclopedia, Guide to Prescription Drugs

*Download and add dictionaries as needed.

Online Dictionaries
● Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
● Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

Using Preloaded Dictionaries

Searching As-You-Type

1 [辞書②] ➡ (Y)

Switch Dictionary
● 明鏡モバイル国語
○ ジーニアスモバイル英和
○ ジーニアスモバイル和英
○ ネット辞書
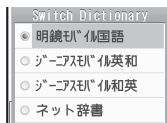
2 Select dictionary ➡ ●

Dictionary Window

● Last used dictionary appears first.

3 Enter reading (spelling for English-Japanese dictionary)

● Enter reading in katakana.
● Search results appear as you type.

4 Select word, etc. ➡ ●

Definition/Translation Window

Looking Up in Online Dictionaries [Definition/Translation Window] ◎ ➡ *WebDict.Search* ➡ ●
■ Perform from 2 (except 4) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on **P.3-14**. (Read bulleted sentence in 1 beforehand.)

Searching by Keyword

1 In Dictionary window, ◎

2 *Search Method* ➡ ● ➡ *Keyword Search* ➡ ●

3 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

4 *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●
● Definition/translation window opens.

Advanced

✎ ●Changing Font Size ●Looking up copied words in dictionaries ●Viewing dictionary information ●Updating dictionary list (And more on **P.3-22**)

3 **Universal Operations, Etc.**

3-13

Copying Text

■ Selected Portions

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Select first character ➡ ●
➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●

■ Index Word Only

1 In definition/translation window, ✉

```
        Options
Copy
Copy Index Word
Bookmark
WebDict.Search
Font Size          》
```
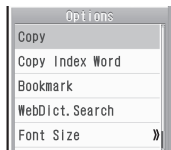
2 *Copy Index Word* ➡ ●

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1 In Dictionary window, ✉

```
        Options
History List
Bookmark List
Kanji Grabber
Scan Text
Search by Copied Te…
```

2 *Add Dictionary* ➡ ●

3 Select file ➡ ●

Canceling Added Dictionary
In ②, *Cancel Dictionary* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
➡ ●

Using Online Dictionaries

1 In Dictionary window, ☯ ➡
ネット辞書 ➡ ●
● Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time; read and then press ●. A confirmation appears subsequently; select image download option.

2 Select pull-down menu ➡ ●

```
        ネット辞書
 Enter text       Search
すべて              ▼
すべて
ウィキペディア
Yahoo!知恵袋
明鏡国語辞典MX. n…
プログレッシブ英和中…
ジーニアス英和辞典MX…
```

3 Select dictionary ➡ ●
● Select *すべて* to look up in all dictionaries at once.

4 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡
Enter text ➡ ●

5 *Search* ➡ ●

6 *Yes* ➡ ●

7 Select word, etc. ➡ ●
● Definition/translation window opens.

Disabling Confirmation
After ⑤, ✉ (✓) ➡ From ⑥
Viewing Dictionary Information
After ⑤, select word, etc. ➡ ✉ ➡
Reference ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Looking Up in Preloaded Dictionaries
After ⑤, ✉ ➡ *Find by Other Dict.* ➡
● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ● ➡
Search ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc.
➡ ●
Opening Terms of Service
After ①, ✉ ➡ *Terms of service* ➡ ●
■ Press ● to return to Dictionary window.

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing Font Size ●Selecting dictionaries for use ●Selecting search method ●Selecting search area (And more on **P.3-22** - **3-23**)

Using History & Bookmarks

Saving Bookmarks

1 **In definition/translation window,** ⊠

> Options
> Copy
> Copy Index Word
> Bookmark
> WebDict. Search
> Font Size   》
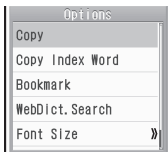
2 *Bookmark* ▶ ●

Opening History or Bookmarks

1 **In Dictionary window,** ⊠

> Options
> History List
> Bookmark List
> Kanji Grabber
> Scan Text
> Search by Copied Te...
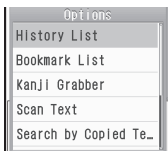
2 *History List* or *Bookmark List* ▶ ●

3 **Select word, etc.** ▶ ●
● Definition/translation window opens.
● Not available in History List of online dictionaries.

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

1 **Type text** ▶ **Before pressing** ● **to complete entry,** 辞書⊘

2 **Select dictionary** ▶ ●

3 *Search* ▶ ● ▶ **Select word, etc.** ▶ ●
● Definition/translation window opens.

Inserting Index Word into Text
After 3, ⊠ ▶ *Paste Index Word* ▶ ●

Advanced

✎ ●Deleting History & bookmarks (**P.3-22**)

Searching Text

Web Search

Packet transmission fees apply.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Doc./Rec.*

2. *Search* ➡ ●

   Search Window

   • *Web Search* is selected by default.

3. Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

4. *Search* ➡ ●
   • Search results appear.

Switching Browsers
   [Search Window] ◌ ➡ *Change Browser* ➡ ● ➡ Select browser ➡ ●

Mail Search

1. In Search window, *Mail Search* ➡ ●

2. Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

3. *Search* ➡ ●

   Select for Search
   By Subject
   By Messages
   By Address
   By All of Above

4. Select option ➡ ●

Searching within Received or Sent Messages
   [Search Window] ◌ ➡ *Change Mail Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Received Messages* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
   Doc./Rec.

2. *Scratch Pad* ➡ ●
   ● Text entry window opens.

3. Enter text ➡ ●

   ```
   Scratch Pad
   1 Save to Notepad
   2 Set as StbyShortcut
   3 Create Message
   4 Save to Calendar
   5 Save to Tasks
   6 Save to Phone Book
   7 Save as Text File
   8 Web Search
   ```
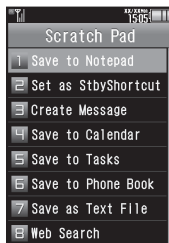
4. *Save to Notepad* ➡ ●
   ● Open saved entries from Notepad.

Other Scratch Pad Usage	
Usage	**Operation**
Paste to Standby	*Set as StbyShortcut* ➡ ● ➡ Select sheet ➡ ●
Enter Mail Message Text	*Create Message* ➡ ● ➡ Select mail type ➡ ●
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	*Save to Calendar* ➡ ●
Enter Task Subject/Details	*Save to Tasks* ➡ ●
Add Last Name/ Phone Number/ Mail Address to Phone Book	*Save to Phone Book* ➡ ● ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	*Save as Text File* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	*Web Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select browser ➡ ●

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1 ● ▶ *Phone* ▶ ● ▶ *Add New Entry* ▶ ●

New Entry
Last Name:
First Name:
Reading-Last Name:
Reading-FirstName:

2 *Last Name:* ▶ ● ▶ Enter last name ▶ ● ▶ *First Name:* ▶ ● ▶ Enter first name ▶ ●

New Entry
Last Name:
Ueda
First Name:
Mikio
Reading-Last Name:
Ueda
Reading-FirstName:
Mikio

● Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3 *Add Phone Number:* ▶ ● ▶ Enter phone number ▶ ● ▶ Select type ▶ ●

Reading-Last Name:
Ueda
Reading-FirstName:
Mikio
Tel 1:
090392XXXX1
Add Phone Number:
Add Email Address:

● To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

4 *Add Email Address:* ▶ ● ▶ Enter mail address ▶ ● ▶ Select type ▶ ●

Tel 1:
090392XXXX1
Add Phone Number:
Email 1:
aabb@xxx.yyy
Add Email Address:
Category:
No Category
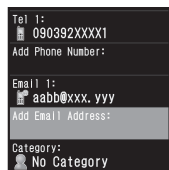
● To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

5 *Category:* ▶ ● ▶ Select Category ▶ ●

New Entry
Tel 1:
090392XXXX1
Add Phone Number:
Email 1:
aabb@xxx.yyy
Add Email Address:
Category:
Friends
Address:
Office:
Save
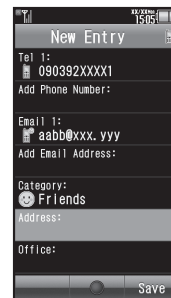
Phone Book Entry Window

6 (Y)

● Entry is saved to Phone Book.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry
● Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Selecting Mode in Dual Mode
  [Phone Book Entry Window] *Mode:*
  ▶ ● ▶ Select mode ▶ ● ▶ **6**

Advanced

◓ ●Saving other information ●Changing illumination settings ●Changing vibration pattern ●Editing Phone Book entries ●Setting incoming mail ring time ●Renaming Categories ●Changing Category icons ●Moving Categories (**P.3-23** - **3-24**)

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call:* ➜ ●**

> For Voice Call
> Assign Tone
> Set Play Point
> Remove Tone/Video

2 *Assign Tone* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ●

3 Select tone/file ➜ ● ➜ ⊙

Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, *Secret:* ➜ ●**

2 *On* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙

Accessing Secret Entries
⊙ ➜ ⊚ ➜ *Unlock Temporarily* ➜
● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ●

Customizing Response by Category

1 ● ➜ *Phone* ➜ ● ➜ *Set Category* ➜ ●

> Set Category
> No Category
> Family
> Friends
> Business

2 Select Category ➜ ⊚ ➜ Select item ➜ ●

3 Select item ➜ ● ➜ Select item, e.g., *Assign Tone* ➜ ● ➜ Customize responses

● Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
● Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry
● Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.

> Save this number to your Phone Book?
> New Entry
> New Detail
> No
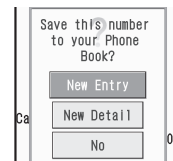
1 **When confirmation appears, *New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ Complete other fields ➜ ⊙**

Saving to an Existing Entry
In 1, *New Detail* ➜ ● ➜ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ Complete other fields ➜ ⊙

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

3-19

Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

1 ☺ ➡ ⊙ **Select katakana row**

Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

● When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators appear.

2 **Select entry** ➡ ●

3 **Select phone number**

4 ☎

Placing Video Calls
After **3**, ● ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ●

Changing Search Method

1 In entry search window, ✉
➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ●

2 *Sort Entries* ➡ ●

Sort Entries
◉ By あかさたな
○ By Category
○ By Reading

3 **Select method** ➡ ●

● Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] ✆ **(press to toggle search methods)**

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.
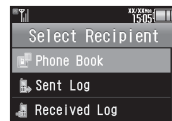
Select Recipient Window

1 *Phone Book* ➡ ●

● Entry search window opens.

2 **Select entry** ➡ ●

3 **Select phone number or mail address** ➡ ●

● Recipient is entered.
● Omit **3** if only one number or address is saved.

Advanced

●Changing view for entry search window ●Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions ●Messaging via Phone Book ●Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book ●Deleting Phone Book entries ●Checking memory status ●Copying Phone Book entries (And more on **P.3-23** - **3-25**)

Customized Screen

Canceling Customized Screen	● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally	🔘 ➡ *Menu List* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting Customized Screens	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Select Customized Screen ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.
Accessing Customized Screen source sites	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Select Customized Screen ➡ ✉ ➡ *Web Access* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Machi-Uta

Using Machi-Uta (Japanese)	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ● ➡ *Machi-Uta* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Searching Music *Music Search* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
	Changing Settings *Settings* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
	Viewing Machi-Uta Information *What's Machi-Uta* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Text Entry

■ Entry & Edit

Opening Help	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●
Using Character Codes	In a text entry window, 🔘 ➡ *Character Code* ➡ ● ➡ Enter four digits
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Input Method* ➡ ● ➡ *Pager Code* ➡ ● ● Return to text entry window and enter two digits.
Inserting line breaks	**At the End of Text** In a text entry window, ⓠ **Mid-Entry** In a text entry window, ✲ ➡ ✲ or ♯ (select *Symbols*) ➡ ✉ ➡ ↵ ➡ ●
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window, ⟩
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Reset Log* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Undo/Recover* ➡ ●
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●

3 Universal Operations, Etc.

3-21

■ Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Predictive* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Previous Usage* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling emoticon/ Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *EmoticonWordLink* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Low Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● (✓) ➡ ⊗
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window, ⊠ ➡ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ● ➡ *Personal Mode* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●

User Dictionary

Deleting entries	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/⊡* ➡ *User Dictionary* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Word List* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Dictionary

■ Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	辞書0 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text, 辞書0 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Search by Copied Text* ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●

Deleting History & bookmarks	**Start Here** 辞書0 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *History List* or *Bookmark List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	One Word Select word ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Words ⊠ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Looking up scanned kanji in dictionaries	辞書0 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Kanji Grabber* ➡ ● ➡ Frame kanji in Loupe ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ● ● Definition/translation window opens.
Looking up scanned text in dictionaries	辞書0 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ Frame text in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ● ● Definition/translation window opens.

■ Preloaded Dictionaries

Viewing dictionary information	辞書0 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Information* ➡ ●

■ Online Dictionaries

Updating dictionary list	辞書0 ➡ ⊛ ➡ *ネット辞書* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Update Dictionaries* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Selecting dictionaries for use	辞書0 ➡ ⊛ ➡ *ネット辞書* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit Dict. List* ➡ ● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ ⊛
Selecting image download option	辞書0 ➡ ⊛ ➡ *ネット辞書* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Show Image* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● For *Auto*, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

Selecting search method	辞書 ➡ ⓨ ➡ **ネット辞書** ➡ ● ➡ **Select pull-down menu** ➡ ● ➡ **Select dictionary** ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Search Method* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ● ● Not available when **すべて** or unsupported dictionary is selected for online dictionary.
Selecting search area	辞書 ➡ ⓨ ➡ **ネット辞書** ➡ ● ➡ **Select pull-down menu** ➡ ● ➡ **Select dictionary** ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Search Area* ➡ ● ➡ **Select area** ➡ ● ● Not available when **すべて** or unsupported dictionary is selected for online dictionary.
Opening Help	辞書 ➡ ⓨ ➡ **ネット辞書** ➡ ● ➡ **Select pull-down menu** ➡ ● ➡ **Select dictionary** ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Help* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Phone Book

■ View Settings

	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Changing view for entry search window	**Portrait Orientation** *Vertical Display* ➡ ● ➡ *List+Business Card* ➡ ● **Landscape Orientation** *Horizontal Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Name+Email* ➡ ●

	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture:* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	**Assigning Images** *Assign Picture* ➡ ● ➡ **Select image** ➡ ● **Capturing Images** *Take Picture* ➡ ● ➡ **Frame image on Display** ➡ ● ➡ ●
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *New Number Prompt* ➡ ● ➡ *Incoming Call* or *Outgoing Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

■ Phone Book Entry

Press ⓨ at the end to save entry. (At least a name, phone number or mail address must be entered.)

	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Saving other information	**Address** *Address:* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete field** ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ **Office** *Office:* ➡ ● ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ **Homepage** *Homepage:* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter URL** ➡ ● ➡ **Select type** ➡ ● **Note** *Note:* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ● **Birthday** *Birthday:* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter date** ➡ ● **Location Information** *Location Info.:* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Location Information** ➡ ●

Changing illumination settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Select item, e.g., *Illumi.-Voice Call:* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**

Enabling Illumination
Switch On/Off ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK

Changing Illumination Pattern
Illumi. Pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK
● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Key Illumination Pattern
Key Pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK
● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*.

Changing vibration pattern	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Select item, e.g., *Vibration-Message:* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK

■ Editing Entries & Categories

Editing Phone Book entries	● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Ⓨ ● Edit Reading after editing names.
Setting incoming mail ring time	● ➡ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Tone-New Message:* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ● ➡ Ⓨ ● Available for compatible ringtones.

Renaming Categories	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Changing Category icons	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ *Change Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●
Moving Categories	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ Ⓨ ➡ Select target location ➡ ● ● View for *By Category* Phone Book search changes accordingly.

■ Using Entries

Messaging via Phone Book	Start Here Ⓠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ **See below**

Phone Numbers
Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Ⓨ

Mail Addresses
Select mail address ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Ⓨ

Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book	Ⓠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Deco. Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Deco. Call File* ➡ ● ➡ *Deco. Call Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Call Type* ➡ ● ➡ *Voice Call* or *Video Call* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ● When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, follow onscreen prompt.
Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book	Ⓠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Call S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Set Connection status to *Online* first.
Placing international calls via Phone Book	Ⓠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Int'l Call* ➡ ● ➡ Select country ➡ ● ➡ 📞

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

Using Location Information via Phone Book	ⓠ ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ● ➡ ⊖ *Settings* ➡ (♪) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set to Destination* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

■ Managing Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	**One Entry** ⓠ ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Entries** ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ **Select entry type** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●
Checking memory status	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ●
Copying Phone Book entries	**One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)** ⓠ ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Copy Entry to USIM* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **One Entry (USIM Card → Handset)** ⓠ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Select Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *USIM Memory* ➡ ● ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Copy Entry to Phone* ➡ ● **All Entries** ⓠ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Copy All* ➡ ● ➡ **Select method** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.

Editing Categories on USIM Card	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change to USIM* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Renaming Categories** **Select Category** ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ● **Moving Categories** **Select Category** ➡ ⓨ ➡ **Select target location** ➡ ● **Changing Icons** **Select Category** ➡ ● ➡ *Change Icon* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Pictogram** ➡ ●
Changing default storage media for new entries	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Save New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *USIM Memory* or *Ask Each Time* ➡ ●
Switching reference Phone Book	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Select Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *USIM Memory* or *Both* ➡ ●

■ Mode Settings
First, activate Double Number.

Changing modes of all entries at once	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Mode(All)* ➡ ● ➡ **Select mode** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●
Changing modes of multiple entries	ⓠ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Multiple Selection* ➡ ● ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ● (✓/☐) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Mode* ➡ ● ➡ **Select mode** ➡ ●
Changing modes of entries by Category	ⓠ ➡ **Select Category** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Mode(Category)* ➡ ● ➡ **Select mode** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ● Set search method to *By Category* first.

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

3-25

Customized Screen

❓ Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

Phone Book

❓ Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls including image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

❓ Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

❓ Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.

4

Calling

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

940SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with *184*). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Bar Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	

Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.
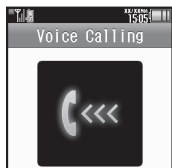
Incoming Voice Call Window

1. **⌕ to accept the call**
   - Call connects.
   - Answer calls with clamshell open.

2. **⌕ ➔ Call ends**

Muting Ringer Temporarily
   When a call arrives, 🔊
Earpiece Volume
   During a call, ⌕ or ◀▶
After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers
- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Voice Call

1. **Enter phone number with area code**
   - To correct entry, use ◀▶ to place cursor under the digit and press 🔙. To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press 🔙.

2. **⌕**
   - Wait for connection.

3. **⌕ ➔ Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
   After ❶, ● ➔ *Select Line(Voice)* ➔
   ● ➔ Select line ➔ ●

Placing an International Call

1. **Enter phone number with area code ➔ ✉**

2. ***Int'l Call* ➔ ●**

3. **Select country ➔ ● ➔ ⌕**
   - Handset dials the number.

4. **⌕ ➔ Call ends**

Calling Unlisted Countries
   In ❸, *Enter Code* ➔ ● ➔ Enter
   country code ➔ ● ➔ ⌕

Advanced

👆 ●Rejecting calls ●Placing calls on hold ●Answering with Headphones ●Adjusting Earpiece Volume ●Sending/blocking Caller ID ●Muting Microphone
●Recording caller voice (And more on **P.4-14** - **4-16**)
●Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (**P.4-20**)

4-3

Placing Calls from Outside Japan

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand. See SoftBank Mobile Website for details: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/ Access roaming area/rate information or print it out to carry with you while traveling abroad.

1 Enter phone number with area code ➡ ☺ ➡ *Int'l Call* ➡ ⦿

2 日本(JPN) ➡ ⦿ ➡ 🔊
 - Handset dials the number.
 - To call other countries, select the target country instead of 日本(JPN).

3 🔊 ➡ Call ends

Calling SoftBank Handsets
 - In **2**, always select 日本(JPN).
Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country
  Enter phone number with area code ➡ 🔊 ➡ *Dial to Your Stay* ➡ ⦿
Calls Overseas
 - Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Answer Phone

Caller messages are recorded on handset.
 - Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.
 - To answer a call mid-recording, press 🔊.
  ■ No message will be recorded.

Playing Messages

1 🔲

2 Select record ➡ ⦿
 - Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

Deleting All Records
  After **1**, ☺ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿

■ Playback Operations

Volume Control	⦿ or ◀▶
Replay/Skip Backward	⦿
Stop	⦿
Skip Forward	⦿
Delete	☺ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Loudspeaker On/Off	⦿

Canceling Answer Phone

1 🔲 (Long)

Reactivating Answer Phone
  🔲 (Long)

Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

Window Description

Other Party's Number/Name

Incoming Image

Outgoing Image
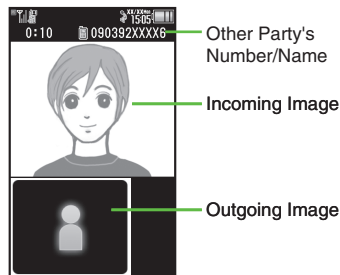
Important Video Call Usage Notes
- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.

Video Calling

Incoming Video Call Window

1   🔄 **to accept the call**
- Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)

2   🔴 ➡ **Call ends**

Answering with Camera Image
[Incoming Video Call Window] ● ➡ *No* ➡ ●

■ **Engaged Video Call Operations**

Toggle View	🔘
Toggle Outgoing Image	●
Open Help	🔄 ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

Placing a Video Call

1   **Enter phone number** ➡ ●

2   *Video Call* ➡ ●
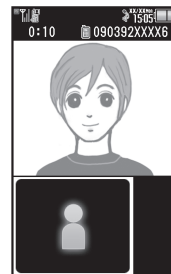
- Call is accepted and image appears.

3   🔴 ➡ **Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
After ❶, *Select Line(Video)* ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●

4

Calling

Advanced

🔲 ●Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on **P.4-14**)
●Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness ●Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls ●Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ●Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on **P.4-16** - **4-20**)

Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.
- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.

Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.

Deco. VoiceCall

URGENT!!

Natsuyama Sora
090392XXXX9

Options Answer Fwd

Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.

1. $\boxed{\smallsetminus}$ **to accept the call**
   - Call connects.
   - Answer calls with clamshell open.

2. $\boxed{\frown}$ ➡ **Call ends**
   - Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

Note
- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.

Placing a Decoration Call

Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number:

1. **Enter phone number** ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxtimes}$ ➡ *Deco. Call* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

Decoration Call
Recipient
090392XXXX8
Deco. Call File
No Category
Call Type
Voice Call

2. *Deco. Call File* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

3. *Deco. Call Folder* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ **Select file** ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
   - To check selected file, press $\textcircled{\tiny Y}$.

4. $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxtimes}$
   - Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

5. $\boxed{\frown}$ ➡ **Call ends**

Placing Your First Decoration Call
- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.
  - To show confirmation next time as well, press $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxtimes}$ ($\boxed{}$).

Placing Decoration Video Calls
After 3, *Call Type* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Video Call* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ 4

Advanced

🈴 ●Creating Decoration Call files ●Editing Decoration Call files ●Saving received Decoration Call files ●Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls
●Hiding incoming Decoration Call window ●Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files ●Showing options upon Decoration Call failure (**P.4-16** - **4-17**)

Speed Dial

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

1. ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ●

2. *Speed Dial/Mail* ➡ ●

3. *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

4. Select phone number ➡ ●

Speed Dial/Mail
Ueda Mikio
Select mail address for speed mail.
090392XXXX1
aabb@xxx.yyy
▶ Do not Assign

● Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press ●. (Omit ⑤.)

5. *Do not Assign* ➡ ●

6. Ⓨ ➡ **Saved**

● To save additional phone numbers, repeat ③ - ⑤.

Using Headphones for Speed Dial
● Save a phone number to ①.
Canceling Speed Dial Entries
　In ③, select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Remove Selected* or *Remove All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
　■ Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

Using Speed Dial

1. ⓪ - ⑨⑨ (entry number)

2. 📞

Placing Video Calls
　In ②, ● ➡ *Speed Video* ➡ ●
Placing Decoration Calls
　In ②, ● ➡ *Speed Deco. Call* ➡ ●
　➡ *Deco. Call File* ➡ ● ➡ *Deco. Call Folder* (or *From Call Log*) ➡ ● ➡ Select file (or record) ➡ ● ➡ ✉
　■ To create a new file, select *Create New File* in Deco. Call File menu.
Using Headphones
● In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in ①. To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.

Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1 ⌕

Call Log
All | Dialed | Dialed Ranking | Received

🖼 Ueda Mikio
XX/XX/XX 15:05

🖼 Kondo Koichi
XX/XX/XX 12:00

🖼 090392XXXX7
XX/XX/XX 11:58
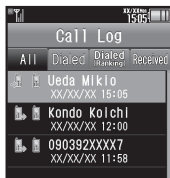
● All Calls opens; press ⊙ to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Ranking and then Received Calls.

2 Select record ➜ ⦿
● Open Decoration Call record and press ⓨ for the corresponding file.

When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option
● Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

Advanced

🖑 ●Dialing from records (And more on **P.4-17**)

4-8

4

Calling

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1. ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Call*

2. *Call Time/Data Counter* ➜ ●
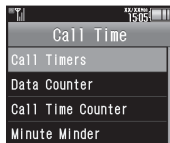
   ```
   ▼Ṯ                    12/30(木)
                         15:05
          Call Time
   Call Timers
   Data Counter
   Call Time Counter
   Minute Minder
   ```
   Call Time/Data Counter Menu

3. *Call Timers* ➜ ●

   ```
   ▼Ṯ                    12/30(木)
                         15:05
          Call Timers
   Dialed Calls
   Received Calls
   Clear Timers
   ```

4. *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls* ➜ ●

Resetting Dialed or Received Call Timer
After ④, ☺ ➜ Enter Handset Code
➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

4

Calling

Advanced

🔧 ●Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls ●Checking accumulated data transmission volume ●Resetting Data Counter (And more on **P.4-17** - **4-18**)

Restrict Destinations

Allow calls to numbers saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ●

2 *Restrict Destinations* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

RestrictDestin.

Specified Numbers
Off

Phonebook Entries
Off

Restrict Destinations Menu

3 *Phonebook Entries* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

When Phonebook Entries is *On*
● Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Permitted List

Specifying Numbers

1 In Restrict Destinations menu, *Specified Numbers* ➡ ●

Specified No.

Switch On/Off
Off

Permitted List

Specified Numbers Menu

2 *Permitted List* ➡ ●

3 *<Empty>* ➡ ●

4 Enter phone number ➡ ●
● Repeat 3 - 4 to add phone numbers.

Activating Permitted List

1 In Specified Numbers menu, *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

2 *On* ➡ ●

Advanced

○Designating Permitted List numbers from saved information ○Editing Permitted List (**P.4-18**)

Reject Numbers

Reject calls from specified/unsaved numbers or calls without Caller ID.

Rejecting Specified Numbers

Specifying Numbers

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
   Call ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ●

2. *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡
   Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

   ```
   Reject Numbers
   Specified Numbers
   Off
   Except Phonebook Entr…
   Off
   Withheld
   Off
   Record on Call Log
   Record
   ```
   Reject Numbers Menu

3. *Specified Numbers* ➡ ●

   ```
   Specified No.
   Switch On/Off
   Off
   Set Reject Number
   ```
   Specified Numbers Menu

4. *Set Reject Number* ➡ ●

5. *<Empty>* ➡ ●

6. **Enter phone number** ➡ ●
   ● Repeat 5 - 6 to add phone numbers.

Activating Rejection

1. **In Specified Numbers menu,**
   Switch On/Off ➡ ●

2. *On* ➡ ●

Rejecting Unsaved Numbers

1. **In Reject Numbers menu,**
   Except Phonebook Entries
   ➡ ●

2. *On* ➡ ●

Saved Numbers Containing *P* (Pause)
● Calls from the number before *P* are rejected.

Rejecting Withheld Caller ID

Calls from public phones or with undisplayable Caller ID are also rejected.

1. **In Reject Numbers menu,**
   Withheld ➡ ●

2. *On* ➡ ●

4

Calling

Advanced

🅑 ●Designating numbers to reject from saved information ●Editing Reject Numbers list ●Excluding rejected calls from Call Log (**P.4-18**)

4-11

Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touch tone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions

*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (*No Answer* set):

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Call*
2. *Voicemail/Divert* ➡ ●
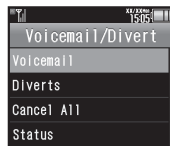
Voicemail/Divert Menu

3. *Diverts* ➡ ●
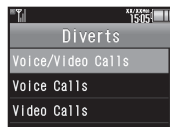
4. Select call type ➡ ●

5. *No Answer* ➡ ●
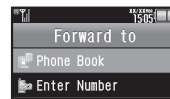
6. *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

7. Select phone number ➡ ●
   ● Omit ❷ if only one number is saved.

8. ●

9. Select ring time ➡ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In ❺, *Always* ➡ ● ➡ ❻ - ❽
Entering Forwarding Number Directly
In ❻, *Enter Number* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ Select ring time ➡ ●

Advanced

●Checking service status (**P.4-19**)

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (*No Answer* set):

1. **In Voicemail/Divert menu, *Voicemail* ➜ ⬤ ➜ *Activate* ➜ ⬤**

```
Activate
Always
No Answer
```
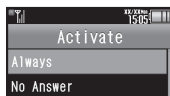
2. ***No Answer* ➜ ⬤ ➜ Select ring time ➜ ⬤**

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In ②, *Always* ➜ ⬤

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

1. **⬤ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⬤ ➜ ⊙ *Call***

```
Settings
Sound/Display  Phone↔  Call  Network
📞 Call Time/Data Cou…
📧 Answer Phone
📮 Voicemail/Divert
📹 Video Call
📱 Show My Number
📵 Missed Calls
📞 Int'l Calling
📵 Call Barring
```
Call Menu
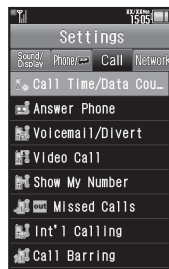
2. **out *Missed Calls* ➜ ⬤ ➜ ⬤**
   - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

1. **In Voicemail/Divert menu, *Voicemail* ➜ ⬤**

2. ***Call Voicemail* ➜ ⬤**
   - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator
In ②, *Delete Icon* ➜ ⬤ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ⬤

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

1. **In Voicemail/Divert menu, *Cancel All* ➜ ⬤**

```
Are you sure?
Yes
No
```
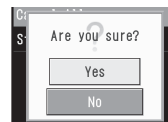
2. ***Yes* ➜ ⬤**

4

Calling

Advanced

  ●**Activating Call Waiting** ●**Talking on multiple lines simultaneously** ●**Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction** ●**Setting/canceling incoming call restriction** (And more on **P.4-19** - **4-20**)

Receiving a Call

■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	**Voice Call** When a call arrives, ☺ ➡ *Reject* ➡ ⦿
	Video Call When a call arrives, ⦅
Placing calls on hold	**When a call arrives, ◹** ● Press ◹ to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	**When a call arrives, Long Press Call Button** ● To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

■ Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives, ☺ ➡ *Record Message* ➡ ⦿
Changing ring time	⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ *Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Answer Time* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter time ➡ ⦿
Sampling outgoing message	⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ *Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Outgoing Message* ➡ ⦿ ● Press ⊞ to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ *Call* ➡ *Answer Phone* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Volume* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Silent* ➡ ⦿

■ Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ *Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below **Saving Numbers from Phone Book** *Auto Answer List* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ☺ ➡ *Change* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *From Phone Book* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select phone number ➡ ⦿ ● To enter a phone number directly, select *<Empty>* and press ⦿. **Saving Numbers from Call Log** *Auto Answer List* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ☺ ➡ *Change* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *From Call Log* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select record ➡ ⦿ **Activating Remote Monitor** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *On* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ ● When Remote Monitor is active, auto answer tone sounds even in Manner mode; cancel afterward. ● Calls cannot be answered automatically with clamshell closed.
Editing Auto Answer List	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ *Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Auto Answer List* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below **Editing Numbers** Select entry ➡ ⦿ ➡ Edit ➡ ⦿ **Deleting Entries** Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Changing ring time	⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ *Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Remote Monitor* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Answer Time* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter time ➡ ⦿

4

Calling

Placing a Call

■ Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Earpiece Volume* ➡ % ➡ Adjust level ➡ %
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, B ➡ *Hide My ID* or *Show My ID* ➡ %

■ International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	&&(+ appears) ➡ Enter country code ➡ Enter phone number with area code ➡ (● Omit the first *0* of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.
Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan	Start Here Enter phone number with area code ➡ (➡ See below ● Prompts do not appear for numbers with country codes. ● To disable Roaming Dial Assistant automatically after a call, press B to check box next to *Don't use this tool again.*. **Calling Japan (Landlines & Mobiles)** *Dial to Japan* ➡ % ➡ (**Calling Other Counties (Landlines & Mobiles)** *Dial to Other Country* ➡ % ➡ Select country ➡ % ➡ (
Disabling Roaming Dial Assistant	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ R *Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ % ➡ *Roaming Dial Assistant* ➡ % ➡ *Off* ➡ % ● When *Off*, handset dials the entered phone number as-is even while outside Japan.

Saving frequently used international prefix	% ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ R *Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ % ➡ *Int'l Prefix* ➡ % ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ % ➡ Enter prefix ➡ %
Adding/changing/deleting country codes	Start Here % ➡ *Settings* ➡ % ➡ R *Call* ➡ *Int'l Calling* ➡ % ➡ *Country Codes* ➡ % ➡ See below **Adding** *<Empty>* ➡ % ➡ Enter name ➡ % ➡ Enter country code ➡ % **Changing** Select country ➡ % ➡ *Change* ➡ % ➡ Enter name ➡ % ➡ Enter country code ➡ % **Deleting** Select country ➡ % ➡ *Delete* ➡ % ➡ *Yes* ➡ %

During a Call

■ Voice Call & Video Call

Muting Microphone	**Voice Call** During a call, m (press again to cancel) **Video Call** During a call, B ➡ *Mute* ➡ % ● To cancel, select *Unmute*.
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	**Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call** During a call, % ➡ While message appears, % ● To cancel, press %. **Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call** During a call, m (press again to activate)
Switching sound output	During a call, B ➡ *Transfer Audio* ➡ % ➡ *To Phone* or *To Bluetooth* ➡ % ● For *To Bluetooth*, select a device and press %.

4
Calling

4-15

Opening Phone Book	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ● ● Press ✆ twice to return to call window.
Saving Phone Book entries	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete fields** ➡ ✔ ● Press ✆ to return to call window.
Disabling touch tone signaling	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Disable DTMF* ➡ ●
Placing calls on hold	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Hold* ➡ ● ● Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. ● To resume Voice Calls, press ☺, select *Retrieve* and press ●. ● To resume Video Calls, press ✔.

■ **Voice Call Only**

Recording caller voice	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Record Caller Voice* ➡ ● ➡ **Recording starts** ➡ ● ➡ **Recording ends**
Opening messages	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Messaging* ➡ ● ➡ **Select Messaging folder** ➡ ● ➡ **Select folder** ➡ ● ➡ **Select message** ➡ ● ● Press ✆ three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Messaging* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Message* **or** *Create New SMS* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ✔

■ **Video Call Only**

Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	**During a call,** ☺ ➡ *Exposure* ➡ ● ➡ **Adjust level** ➡ ● ● Alternative Image brightness is fixed.

Decoration Call

	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ☺ ➡ *Create New File* ➡ ● ➡ *Text Input* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ● ➡ *Images* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Creating Decoration Call files	**Using Still Images** *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ➡ *Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ **Select folder** ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* **or** *No* ➡ ● ➡ ✔ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
	Using Video *Video* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* **or** *No* ➡ ● ➡ ✔ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
	Using Flash® Animation *Flash®* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* **or** *No* ➡ ● ➡ ✔ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Editing Decoration Call files	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ **Edit** ➡ ✔ ➡ *Save as New* **or** *Overwrite* ➡ ● ● For *Save as New*, select *Save here* and press ●.
Saving received Decoration Call files	☎ ➡ **Select record** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Save File* ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Call* ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●
Hiding incoming Decoration Call window	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Call* ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Play in Receiving* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Create New File* ➡ ● ➡ *Text Input* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ *Images* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Capturing Still Images *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Take Picture* ➡ ● ➡ ● to shoot ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
	Recording Video *Video* ➡ ● ➡ *Record Video* ➡ ● ➡ ● to start recording ➡ ● to stop ➡ *Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
Showing options upon Decoration Call failure	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Decoration Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Notice* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

Call Log

Dialing from records	**Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)** ⊙ ➡ Select record ➡ 🕾 ● To place Video Calls, press ⊠ instead of 🕾, then select *Video Call* and press ●.
	Calling from Received Call Records ⊙ ➡ Select record ➡ 🕾 ● To place Video Calls, press ⊠ instead of 🕾, then select *Video Call* and press ●.
Sending messages from records	🕾 ➡ Select record ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊻
Saving Phone Book entries from records	🕾 ➡ Select record ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⊻ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.

Placing Decoration Calls from records	🕾 ➡ Select record ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Deco. Call* ➡ ● ➡ *Deco. Call File* ➡ ● ➡ Select/create file ➡ ⊠
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	🕾 ➡ Select record ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Call S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Set Connection status to *Online* first.
Deleting records	**One Record** 🕾 ➡ Select record ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Records 🕾 ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Hiding Dialed Ranking	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Log Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Hide Dialed Ranking* ➡ ● ● Handset Code is required to re-select *Show Dialed Ranking*.

Call Time & Data Communication

■ Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Minute Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding Call Time during calls	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Time Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Resetting Call Timers	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Timers* ➡ ● ➡ *Clear Timers* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Data Communication

Checking accumulated data transmission volume	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *All Data* ➡ ●
Resetting Data Counter	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Time/ Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Clear Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Restrict Destinations

Designating Permitted List numbers from saved information	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Destinations* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Permitted List* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ☺ ➡ See below
	From Phone Book *Ph.Book List* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone number ➡ ●
	From Call Log Records *From Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
	From S! Friend's Status Member List *From Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ●
Editing Permitted List	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Destinations* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Permitted List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
	Deleting Numbers Select number/name ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Reject Numbers

Designating numbers to reject from saved information	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Reject Number* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ☺ ➡ See below
	From Phone Book *Ph.Book List* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●
	From Call Log Records *From Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
	From S! Friend's Status Member List *From Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ Select member ➡ ●
Editing Reject Numbers list	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Specified Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Reject Number* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
	Deleting Numbers Select number/name ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Excluding rejected calls from Call Log	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ ● ➡ *Reject Numbers* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Record on Call Log* ➡ ● ➡ *Do not Record* ➡ ●

Optional Services

■ All Services

Checking service status	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ $\odot$ *Call* ➡ Select service ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Status* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ● For *Call Barring*, select restriction and press $\circledbullet$.

■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ $\odot$ *Call* ➡ *Call Waiting* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *On* ➡ $\circledbullet$
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	**A tone sounds during a Voice Call** ➡ $\boxed{\text{⌕}}$ ● Press $\boxed{\text{⌕}}$ to switch between lines. ● Press $\boxed{\text{☎}}$ to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a Call	**During a Voice Call, enter phone number** ➡ $\boxed{\text{⌕}}$ ● Long Press $\boxed{\text{⌕}}$ to select a number from Call Log records.
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	**During a Voice Call,** $\boxed{\text{⌕}}$ ● Press $\boxed{\text{⌕}}$ to switch between lines.
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	**While switching between lines,** $\textcircled{\tiny{✉}}$ ➡ *Group Calling* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Conference All* ➡ $\circledbullet$
Switching to private conversation	**During Group Calling, select number/name** ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Private* ➡ $\circledbullet$

■ Call Barring

Changing Network Password	$\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ $\odot$ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Change NW Password* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ Enter current Network Password ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ Enter new Network Password ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ Re-enter new Network Password ➡ $\circledbullet$
Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	**Start Here** $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ $\odot$ *Call* ➡ *Call Barring* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *Bar Outgoing Calls* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ **See below** **Setting Restriction** Select restriction ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ *On* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ $\circledbullet$ ● **Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted.** ● Outgoing S! Circle Talk requests are not affected. ● Following restrictions are available: ■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls ■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls ■ Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan **Canceling All Restrictions** *Cancel All* ➡ $\circledbullet$ ➡ Enter Network Password ➡ $\circledbullet$

4

Calling

Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	Start Here ● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Call Barring* → ● → *Bar Incoming Calls* → ● → See below

	Setting Restriction
	Select restriction → ● → *On* → ● → Enter Network Password → ●
	● **Incoming SMS messages are also restricted.**
	● Incoming S! Circle Talk requests are not affected.
	● Following restrictions are available:
	  ■ All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls
	  ■ Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan

	Canceling All Restrictions *Cancel All* → ● → Enter Network Password → ●

■ Caller ID

Showing/hiding Caller ID	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Show My Number* → ● → *On* or *Off* → ●

Settings

■ Voice Call

Answering calls automatically when using Headphones	Start Here ● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Auto Answer* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → See below
	Activating Auto Answer *Switch On/Off* → ● → *On* → ● ● When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.
	Changing Ring Time *Answer Time* → ● → Enter time → ●

■ Video Call

Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Camera Picture* → ● → *Default Image* → ● → *External Camera* → ●
Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Loudspeaker* → ● → *Off* → ●
Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Mute Microphone* → ● → *On* → ●
Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Camera Picture* → ● → *Alternative Image* → ● → Select folder → ● → Select file → ● → ●
Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Incoming Picture* or *Outgoing Picture* → ● → Select quality → ●
Setting image that is sent while call is on hold	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Hold Guidance Pict* → ● → Select folder → ● → Select file → ● → ● ● Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen image.
Setting Backlight status	● → *Settings* → ● → ⊙ *Call* → *Video Call* → ● → *Backlight* → ● → Select option → ● ● Selecting *Normal Setting* applies Display Backlight settings.

Receiving a Call

Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice

- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call

Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

Cannot place call

- Cancel Keypad Lock, Function Lock and Offline Mode, if active.

Call won't connect

- Did you include the area code or the first *0*? Dial the number including the area code or *0*.
- Handset may be out-of-range (*out* appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

Camera image switches to Alternative Image during Video Calls

- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (**P.4-3**).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (**P.4-15**) to *To Phone*.

4

Calling

4

Calling

Other

? **Call Time (in *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls*) seems incorrect**

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

? **Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding**

- Does the number start with *1*, *00*, *0120* or *0990*? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.

5

Messaging

Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumerics with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach media files, etc.

Large Size Messages
Transmit messages of up to 2 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 940SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

■ **Available Entry Items**

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

● A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
● For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (**P.5-30**).

5

Messaging

5-2

Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.
For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**).

Changing Address

1 ⓒ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ◉

2 *Address Settings* ➡ ◉
- Handset connects to the Internet. Select *English* and press ◉, then follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank Mobile sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.

```
        Information
  ☑ 1 Message


 Clear           Exit
```
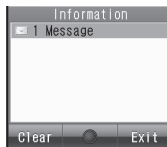
To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 *Message* ➡ ◉

```
               XX/XXSun
                 15:05
     Received Msg.
Mail               2/  2
☑ Information  XX/XX 15:05
  Eメールアドレス案内
📄 Kimura Tetsu…  XX/XX 11:00
```

2 *Information* ➡ ◉

```
               XX/XXSun
                 15:05
     Received Msg.
Mail               2/  2
☑ Information  XX/XX 15:05
┌─────────────────┐
│ The Information  │
│ which notifies   │ 00
│ your Mail Address│
│ is included in   │
│ this message.    │
│  ┌───────────┐   │
│  │    Yes    │   │ お
│  └───────────┘   │
│  ┌───────────┐   │
│  │    No     │   │
│  └───────────┘   │
└─────────────────┘
現在設定されているお客さまのE
```

3 *Yes* ➡ ◉

```
               XX/XXSun
                 15:05
    Edit My Details
Last Name:
Yamada
First Name:
Takako
Reading-Last Name:
Yamada
Reading-FirstName:
Takako
Tel 1📞:
📱 090392XXXX5
Add Phone Number:

Email 1📧:
📧 ccc@xxx.yyy
```

4 ⓨ

5

Messaging

5-3

Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

1 ⊠ ➔ *Create Message* ➔ ⦿
When a PC Mail Account exists, select *S! Mail* and press ⦿.

S! Mail Composition Window

2 Select recipient field ➔ ⦿

3 *Phone Book* ➔ ⦿

4 Select entry ➔ ⦿

5 Select number or mail address ➔ ⦿
● Omit **5** if only one number or address is saved.
● When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

6 Select subject field ➔ ⦿ ➔ Enter subject ➔ ⦿

7 Select message text field ➔ ⦿

Text Entry Window

8 Enter message ➔ ⦿

S! Mail Composition Window

9 ⓨ ➔ **Transmission starts**
● To cancel, press ⓨ during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
● Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode
● When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

Previewing Outgoing Message
    After **8**, ⊠ ➔ *Prview Message* ➔ ⦿

Pictogram Entry
● In Pictogram List, press 🔘 to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
● Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
    [S! Mail Composition Window] ⊠ ➔ *Switch Line* ➔ ⦿ ➔ Select line ➔ ⦿

Advanced

✍ ●Using other recipient entry methods ●Adding recipients ●Inserting signature automatically ●Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.5-20**)
●Saving without sending ●Requesting delivery confirmation ●Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.5-21** - **5-22**)
●Requesting Delivery Report for all messages ●Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages ●Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on **P.5-30**)

Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

1 **In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field ➡ ●**

Attach File
Picture
Sound
Video
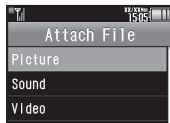
2 *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●

3 Select file ➡ ●

S! Mail   XXXKB
Ueda Mikio
Wedding
Attach (1)
Please bring a camera a
nd a tripod to Mr. Yama
moto and Miss Kawahashi
's wedding next Sunday.
Attach File Window

4 ⓨ ➡ **Transmission starts**

Attaching Non-Image Files
● In 2, select a folder other than *Picture* and press ●, then select a file.
Attaching Multiple Files
   After 3, *Attach (1)* ➡ ● ➡ *Attach File* ➡ ● ➡ From 2
■ *X* in *Attach (X)* indicates the number of attached files.

Auto Image Resize

Large images may be automatically reduced to approximately 400 - 500 KB by default.
Change resize setting via Picture Auto Resize (**P.5-32**).

If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 2 MB)
● Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

Sending Feeling Mail

1 **In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ⓩ ➡ *Feeling Settings* ➡ ●**

Feeling Settings
Happy/Glad
OK/Good
Sad/Sorry
NG/Bad
Imp./Notice

2 Select category, e.g., *Happy/Glad* ➡ ●

3 Select item, e.g., *I Love You* ➡ ●

S! Mail   547B
Ueda Mikio
Wedding
Attach File

4 ⓨ ➡ **Transmission starts**

Canceling Feeling Mail
   [S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select Pictogram, e.g., ♪ ➡ ⌧ ➡ ●

5

Messaging

Advanced

🖑 ●Changing attached image size ●Set Auto Play File (And more on **P.5-22**)
●Disabling image auto-resize ●Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size ●Limiting incoming S! Mail message size (And more on **P.5-32**)

5-5

Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

1 **In text entry window,**
[icon] (Long)
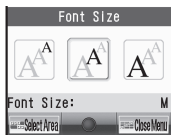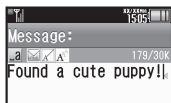
A COLOR 色	A SIZE サイズ	IMAGE 画像
マ絵文字 MY PICT	挿入 INSERT	効果 EFFECT
背景 BG	装飾解除 CANCEL	戻す UNDO

Font Color:
Select Area Close Menu

Graphic Mail Window

2 *SIZE* ➡ ●

Font Size
A^A A^A A^A
Font Size: M
Select Area Close Menu

3 **Select size ➡ ● ➡ Enter**
text

Message:
a ✉ A   179/30K
Found a cute puppy!|

4 Ⓨ ➡ *BG* ➡ ● ➡ Select
color ➡ ●

Message:
a ✉ A   197/30K
Found a cute puppy!|

5 Ⓨ ➡ *IMAGE* ➡ ● ➡ Select
folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file
➡ ●

Specify point.
By pressing ●
to insert.

6 Select target location ➡ ●
➡ [CLEAR/BACK]

7 Ⓨ ➡ *MY PICT* ➡ ● ➡ Ⓨ
➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ [CLEAR/BACK]

Message:
a ✉ A   305/30K
Found a cute puppy!
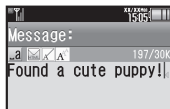
8 Ⓨ ➡ *EFFECT* ➡ ●

Effect
A ↔ ☰
Blink

9 *Scrolling* ➡ ●
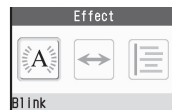
Scrolling
A A ←
Right to Left
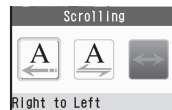
10 **Select direction ➡ ● ➡**
Enter text

11 ● ➡ Ⓨ ➡ **Transmission**
starts

Canceling Last Action
  [Graphic Mail Window] *UNDO* ➡ ●
Canceling All Graphic Mail Settings
  [Graphic Mail Window] *CANCEL* ➡
  ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Saving as Templates
  After ⑩, ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Save as*
  Template ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
  ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●
  ■ Only the message text is saved.

Advanced

✉ ●Creating Graphic Mail from templates ●Changing text color, size & effect ●Changing text color ●Inserting background sound ●Inserting Flash® file
●Inserting horizontal line ●Flashing text ●Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on **P.5-22** - **5-23**)

Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1. ⊠ ➡ *Create New SMS* ➡ ●
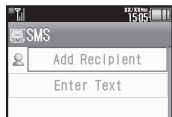
   SMS Composition Window

2. Select recipient field ➡ ●

3. *Phone Book* ➡ ●

4. Select entry ➡ ●
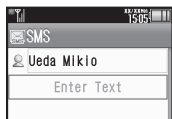
5. Select number ➡ ●

   ● Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

6. Select message text field ➡ ●
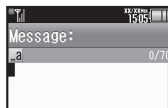
   Text Entry Window

7. Enter message ➡ ●

   SMS Composition Window

8. ⓨ ➡ Transmission starts

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
● Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode
● When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit
● A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:
  Yes ➡ ●

Specifying Line in Dual Mode
  [SMS Composition Window] ⊠ ➡
  Switch Line ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ●

5

Messaging

Advanced

🖐 ●Using other recipient entry methods ●Adding recipients ●Using Speed Dial/Mail list ●Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.5-20**)
●Saving without sending ●Requesting delivery confirmation ●Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on **P.5-21** - **5-22**)
●Changing Server sent message storage limit ●Changing SMS Server number ●Changing character encoding for composing messages (**P.5-34**)

Restricting Outgoing Messages

Allow messaging to handset numbers/
addresses saved in Phone Book or
Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

1 B ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●

2 *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡
Send/Compose ➡ ●

3 *Restrictions Setting* ➡ ● ➡
Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Set Restrict Mail Menu

4 *Phonebook Entries* ➡ ● ➡
On ➡ ●

When Phonebook Entries is *On*
- Handset Code is required to add/edit
Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Permitted List

Specifying Mail Addresses

1 In Set Restrict Mail menu,
Individual Address ➡ ●

Individual Address Menu

2 *Permitted List* ➡ ●

3 *<Empty>* ➡ ●

4 Select method ➡ ● ➡
Select/enter address ➡ ●
- Repeat 3 - 4 to add mail addresses.

Activating Permitted List

1 In Individual Address menu,
Switch On/Off ➡ ●

2 *On* ➡ ●

Advanced

🖑 ●Deleting Permitted List entries (**P.5-31**)

Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.
See **P.5-19** to receive PC Mail.

```
Information
1 Message
```

Important Message Retrieval Notes

- By default, if message size is around 1 MB or less, the complete message including attachments is retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval outside Japan may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Auto Settings to *Off*; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

Delivery Report

- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:
  Delivery Report ➜ ● ➜ **Select message with report** ➜ ● ➜ ⓨ

1 *Message* ➜ ●

Received Msg.
Mail 3/ 3
✉ Ueda Mikio XX/XX 15:05
How's it going?
✉ Ueda Mikio XX/XX 13:00
📩 Kimura Tetsu... XX/XX 12:00

I've just finished my work.
How about you? I'll be at the
place at around 8 pm.
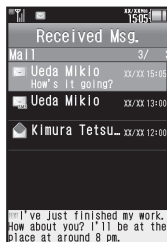
Message List

2 Select message ➜ ●

Received Msg. 0003
👤 Ueda Mikio
📧 How's it going?
🕐 XX/XX 15:05
I've just finished my wo
rk. How about you? I'll
be at the place at aroun
d 8 pm.
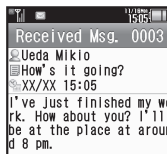
- Message window opens.

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Illumination Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

  Enter or select answer ➜ ●
- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is entered as the first character of subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

Mail Notice

- Depending on the setting (e.g., Auto Settings is *Off*), Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
  - The message was sent to multiple recipients
  - Files are attached to the message
- If message size exceeds 1 MB, Server sends only initial portion of message text regardless of Auto Settings status. (Approximate size appears in message text.)

5

Messaging

Advanced

👆 ●Accessing new mail out of Standby ●Retrieving new S! Mail manually ●Retrieving remaining portions (And more on **P.5-23**)
●Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ●Changing ringtone settings (And more on **P.5-31** - **5-32**)

Window Description

Message List
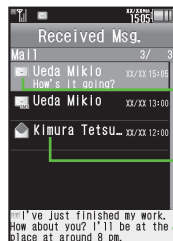
Message Type/Status
(see below)

Sender or Recipient

Message Text

Message Type/Status

⊠	Unread	📨	Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
◆	Read	🔖	Unread Delivery Report
⊠	Sent	🔋	Attachments
⊠	Failed	🔒	Protected
●	Replied	●	Priority (High)
●	Forwarded	●	Priority (Low)
🔖	Send Reservation set	📭	USIM Card SMS

"SMS" or "PC" appears accordingly on indicators.

Message Window

Sender or Recipient

Subject (except for SMS)

Received or
Sent Date & Time

Message Text

Press ✳ to open next (newer) message,
or # to open previous (older) one.

Changing Font Size
[Message Window] 3 (Long) to
enlarge or 1 (Long) to reduce

Replying to Messages

1 In message window, Y
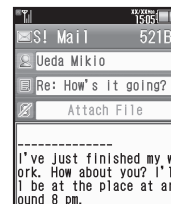
- Original message text is quoted
(except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

2 Complete message ➡ Y ➡
Transmission starts

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients
After **1**, *To Sender* or *Reply All* ➡
● ➡ **2**

Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)
- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words in suggestion list.

Auto Reply
- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).

Advanced

✍ ●Saving attachments to Data Folder ●Saving to Phone Book ●Using linked info ●Looking up message text words in dictionaries ●Jumping to message top/bottom ●Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers ●Selecting mail type/quote option ●Opening received message for reference ●Replying quickly using fixed text ●Replying to messages automatically (And more on **P.5-24** - **5-25**)
●Selecting quote option (**P.5-30**)

5

Messaging

5-10

Customizing S! Mail Retrieval

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to manual (Server sends only initial portion of message text without attachments) or set handset to retrieve complete messages automatically by specifying sender type, mail address, etc.

Retrieving Messages Manually

1 ⊚ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ●

2 *S! Mail Settings* ➔ ●

3 *Message DL* ➔ ●
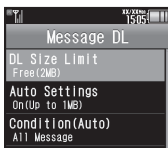
Message DL Menu

4 *Auto Settings* ➔ ●

5 *Off* ➔ ●

Retrieving Complete S! Mail Automatically when Approximate Size is 300 KB or Less
In 5, *On(Up to 300KB)* ➔ ●

Restricting Automatic Retrieval

By Sender Type

1 In Message DL menu,
Condition(Auto) ➔ ●

2 *Selected Mail* ➔ ⊚

Selected Mail Menu

3 Select item ➔ ● (□/✓)
➔ ᵞ

By Mail Address

Specify mail addresses or domains (alphanumerics after @ of mail addresses).

1 In Selected Mail menu,
Individual Address ➔ ⊚
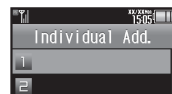
2 Select blank entry ➔ ●

3 Select method ➔ ● ➔
Select/enter address ➔ ●
● Repeat 2 - 3 to add mail addresses.

4 ᵞ

5 ● (✓) ➔ ᵞ

Restricting by Domain (Direct Entry)
In 1, *Receive by the Domain* ➔ ⊚
➔ Select blank entry ➔ ● ➔ *Direct Entry* ➔ ● ➔ Enter domain ➔ ● ➔
ᵞ ➔ 5

Messaging 5

Advanced

🔧 ●Retrieving remaining portions (**P.5-23**)
●Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval (**P.5-32**)

5-11

Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.

Messaging	
Received Msg.	— Received Messages
Create Message	
Retrieve New Msg.	— Incomplete/Unsent Messages
Drafts	
Templates	
Sent Messages	— Sent Messages
Unsent Messages	— Failed or Send Reservation Messages
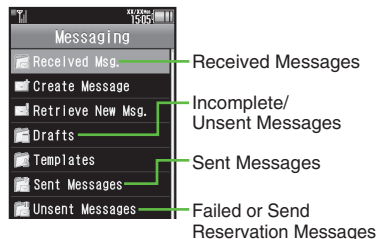
Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:
  ⊠ ➡ *Help* ➡ ●

When Failed Message is Saved

- A reminder message appears upon opening Messaging menu.

Checking Messages

1. ⊠ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

   Received Msg.
   Mail
   Folder 1
   Folder 2
   Folder 3

   Folder List

   - When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
   - Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press ⊙ to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press ●.

2. Select folder ➡ ●

   Received Msg.
   Mail   3/   3
   Ueda Mikio   XX/XX 15:05
   How's it going?
   Ueda Mikio   XX/XX 13:00
   Kimura Tetsu... XX/XX 12:00

   Message List

3. Select message ➡ ●

   Received Msg. 0003
   Ueda Mikio
   How's it going?
   XX/XX 15:05
   I've just finished my work. How about you? I'll be at the place at around 8 pm.

   Message Window

Protecting Messages

1. In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ●
2. *Lock* ➡ ●

Canceling Protection
In ❷, *Unlock* ➡ ●

Advanced

✍ ●Selecting multiple messages ●Deleting messages ●Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list (And more on **P.5-26** - **5-27**)
●Forwarding messages ●Sending from Drafts ●Checking Server Mail message count and volume (And more on **P.5-29**)
●Changing message window scroll unit ●Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages ●Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on **P.5-30**)

Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

1 ⊠ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

2 ⊠ ➡ *Search* ➡ ●

3 *Search All Msg.* ➡ ●

4 Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address or text ➡ ●

Searching by Folder
In ❷, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ *Search Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ❹

Searching Message Text
● Follow these steps to find specific words/ phrases; limit search by character type.
[Message Window] ⊠ ➡ *Search Text* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
■ Press ⊙ or ⊠ to jump to next/ previous search result.

Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within.
Chat Folders are not affected.

1 ⊠ ➡ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

2 Select folder ➡ ⊠

Options
Rename
Create New Folder
Relocate Folder
Set Secret
My Folders

3 *Set Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders
After ❶, ⊠ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

5

Messaging

Advanced

✎ ●Moving messages manually ●Renaming folders ●Deleting folders ●Adding folders ●Moving folders ●Changing status of all messages within folders to read ●Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders ●Canceling Secret (**P.5-27**)

5-13

Sorting Messages

Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in subject or SMS message text.

1. ⊠ ➔ *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* ➔ ●

2. Select target folder ➔ ⊠

3. *My Folders* ➔ ● ➔ Select blank entry ➔ ●

   ```
   Auto Sort Keys
   Sender
   Sender(Domain)
   ```
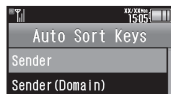
4. *Sender* (*Recipient* for Sent Messages) ➔ ●

   ```
   Select Recipient
   Phone Book
   Sent Log
   Received Log
   ```
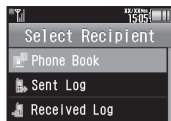
5. Select method ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ●

6. ⊠ ➔ Saved

Sorting by Domain (Direct Entry)
In ❹, *Sender(Domain)* (*Recipient(Domain)* for Sent Messages) ➔ ● ➔ *Direct Entry* ➔ ● ➔ Enter domain ➔ ● ➔ ❻
Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text
In ❹, *Subject* ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ● ➔ ❻

Filtering Spam

Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:
(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

1. ⊠ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *General Settings* ➔ ●

   ```
   General Settings
   Send/Compose
   Receive
   Anti Spam Measures
   ```
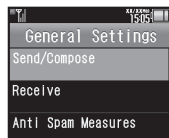
2. *Anti Spam Measures* ➔ ●

3. Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

   ```
   Anti Spam Measures
   Unregistered(Mobil...
   Unregistered Entry...
   Individual(Common)
   Permitted List(Com...
   ```
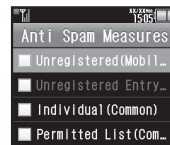
4. *Unregistered(Mobile)* ➔ ● (☑)

5. ⓨ ➔ ●

Exempting Messages from Filtering
After ❹, *Permitted List(Common)* ➔ ⊠ ➔ Select blank entry ➔ ● ➔ Select key ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address/subject ➔ ● ➔ ⓨ ➔ ● (☑) ➔ ❺
When a PC Mail Account Exists
• Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

🎇 ●Re-sorting messages ●Sorting spam by setting keys ●Editing/deleting sort keys (**P.5-28**)

Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

Saving Members

1 ⊠ ➜ *Chat Folder* ➜ ⬤

Chat Folder
🗂 Group①
🗂 Group②
🗂 Group③
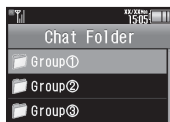
Chat Folder List

2 Select folder ➜ ⊠

Options
Add New Member
Rename
Create New Folder
Delete Folder
Set Secret

3 *Add New Member* ➜ ⬤

Register Member
1
2
3
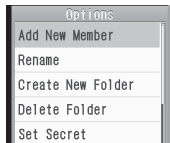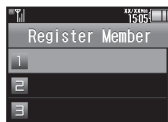
4 Select blank entry ➜ ⬤
- Select saved member to edit number/address.

5 Select method ➜ ⬤ ➜ Select/enter number/address ➜ ⬤

Register Member
1 Ueda Mikio
2
3

- Repeat **4** - **5** to add members.

6 🅨 ➜ Saved

Changing Members
In **4**, select member ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Change Member* ➜ ⬤ ➜ From **5**
Deleting Members
In **4**, select member ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ⬤ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ⬤ ➜ **6**

Opening Chat Folders

1 In Chat Folder list, select folder ➜ ⬤

Chat Folder
Group① 2/ 2
🖼 Yamada Takako xx/xx 15:05
    I'll be heading there a...
💬 Ueda Mikio xx/xx 15:05
    I've just finished my w...

2 Select message ➜ ⬤

5

Messaging

Advanced

⚙ ●Deleting folders ●Deleting all messages ●Resetting Chat Folders (**P.5-28**)

5-15

Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.
Save target recipients to Phone Book beforehand.

1. ⓐ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ⦿

2. *Set Mail Group* ➜ ⦿

   Mail Groups
   <Add New Group>

   Mail Group Entry Window

3. *<Add New Group>* ➜ ⦿ ➜ Enter name ➜ ⦿

4. Select Group ➜ ⦿

   Circle
   <Assign New Entry>

5. *<Assign New Entry>* ➜ ⦿ ➜ Select entry ➜ ⦿

   Ueda
   Mikio
   090392XXXX1
   aabb@xxx.yyy

6. Select number or mail address ➜ ⦿

   Circle
   <Assign New Entry>
   Ueda Mikio
   090392XXXX1
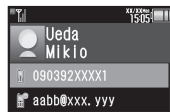
   ● Omit 🄶 if only one number or address is saved.
   ● Repeat 🄴 - 🄶 to add members.

7. ⓨ ➜ Saved

Messaging

5

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.

Save PC mail account information to handset:

- User Name
- Password
- Mail Address
- Incoming Mail Server
- Outgoing Mail Server

Retrieve mail delivered to ISP or Yahoo! accounts.

- Alternatively, use automatic message retrieval option.

Messages are saved in unique folders; reply to/send messages via PC mail account addresses.

PC Mail Folder

- Handle messages (sort, etc.) like S! Mail or SMS. (Unavailable functions do not appear in Options menu and some may appear under different names.)
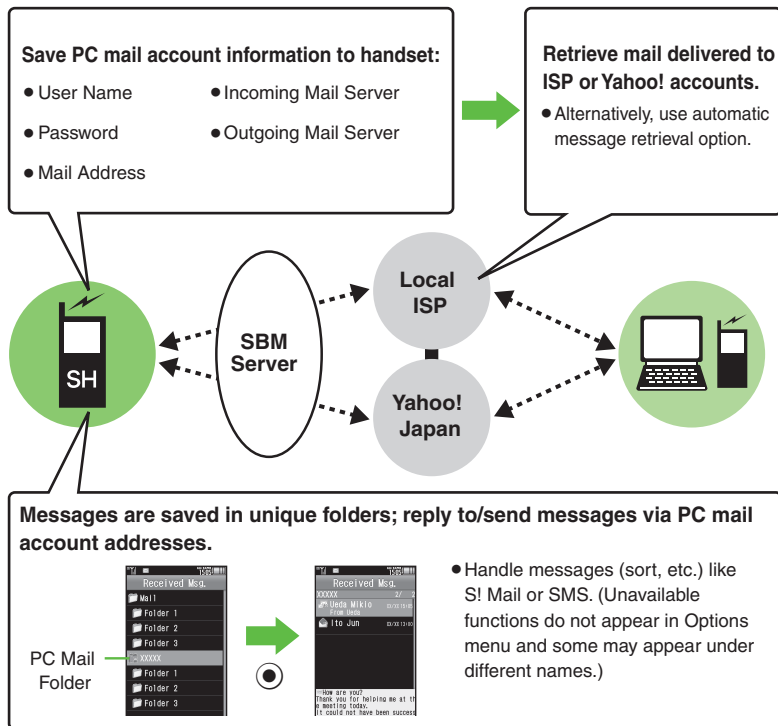
Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high packet transmission fees; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.

PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.

■ Mandatory Items for Retrieval

User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

■ Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press ⊚.

---

1 ⊚ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ●

    PC Mail Settings
    PC Mail Account
    PC Mail DL
    Beginning Only

2 *PC Mail Account* ➡ ●
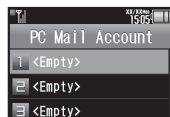
    PC Mail Account
    1 <Empty>
    2 <Empty>
    3 <Empty>

3 *<Empty>* ➡ ●

4 *Account Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

5 *Set Receiving* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select/ enter item ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.

6 *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter item ➡ ●

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

7 ⓨ ➡ ⓨ ➡ ●

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses

In 3, *Set Quick Yahoo! Mail* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Choose *No* to create a new account.

Editing Accounts

In 3, select account ➡ ● ➡ From 4

Deleting Accounts

In 3, select account ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

In 6, *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ *Sender Auth.* ➡ ● ➡ *SMTP Auth.* ➡ ⊚ ➡ *User Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Password* ➡ ● ➡ Enter password ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ➡ 📇 ➡ 7

Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.

1 ⊠ ➜ ⊠

2 ⊠

3 Select PC Mail folder ➜ ● ➜ Select message ➜ ●

```
<to be continued> 1KB
Options          More
```
Message Window

● Press ⊽ to retrieve full message.
● Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

Deleting Messages
[Message List] Select message ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Retrieving Messages by Account
After 1, select account ➜ ● ➜ 3

Checking Received PC Mail

1 ⊠ ➜ *Received Msg.* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ●

● Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.

2 Select message ➜ ●

● Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail

1 In message window, ⊽

● PC Mail Composition window opens.
● Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).

2 Complete message ➜ ⊽ ➜ Transmission starts

Replying without Quoting Original Message Text
[Message Window] ⊠ ➜ *Reply-To Addr.* ➜ ● ➜ *PC Mail* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⊽

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages
[PC Mail Composition Window] Select recipient field ➜ ● ➜ *From:* ➜ ● ➜ Select account ➜ ●

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

1 ⊠ ➜ *Create Message* ➜ ●

2 Select PC Mail Account ➜ ●

3 Complete message ➜ ⊽ ➜ Transmission starts

Converting PC Mail to S! Mail
After 2, ⊠ ➜ *Convert to S! Mail* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

Note
● Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

5

Messaging

Advanced

✍ ●Retrieving complete PC Mail messages ●Retrieving new messages automatically ●Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder ●Disabling automatic word wrap ●Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses ●Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval ●Restricting complete message retrieval by size (**P.5-33** - **5-34**)

5-19

Creating/Sending Messages

■ Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select method ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select/ enter number/address ▶ ⦿
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Add Recipient* ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select method ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select recipient ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select status ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿ ● Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
Using Speed Dial/ Mail list	**Saving Recipients** ⦿ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Speed Dial/Mail* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *<Empty>* ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select entry ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select number or mail address ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Do not Assign* ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿ **Creating Messages** In Standby, ⓪ - ⑨⑨ (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ▶ ⦿ ● When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ⦿.
Editing/deleting recipients	**Start Here** In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ▶ ⦿ ▶ See below **Editing Recipients** Select recipient ▶ ⦿ ▶ Edit ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿ **Deleting a Recipient** Select recipient ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿ **Deleting All Recipients** Select recipient ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿
Editing Speed Dial/ Mail list	**Start Here** ⦿ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Speed Dial/Mail* ▶ ⦿ ▶ See below **Editing Entries** Select entry ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Change* ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select number/address ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select new number/ address ▶ ⦿ ▶ ⦿ **Canceling Entries** Select entry ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Remove Selected* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ⦿ **Canceling All Entries** ⦿ ▶ *Remove All* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ⦿

■ Message Text

Inserting signature automatically	⦿ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *S! Mail Settings* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Signature* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Edit* ▶ ⦿ ▶ Enter signature ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Auto Insert* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *On* ▶ ⦿ ● Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies. ● Not available for SMS.
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window, ⦿ ▶ *Insert/Font Size* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Signature* ▶ ⦿
Inserting ASCII Art	In text entry window, ⦿ ▶ *Call ASCII Art* ▶ ⦿ ▶ Select entry ▶ ⦿
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window, ⦿ ▶ *Change to SMS* or *Convert to S! Mail* ▶ ⦿ ▶ *Yes* ▶ ⦿

5

Messaging

5-20

■ Save, Send Reservation & Sent Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message, B ➡ *Save to Drafts* ➡ ●
Sending automatically later	Start Here **After completing message, B ➡ *Send Reservation* ➡ ● ➡ See below** **Auto Send when Signal Returns** *Within the Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Designating Send Date/Time (within 30 days)** *Date & Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Canceling sent S! Mail	B ➡ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ B ➡ *Set Sent Cancel* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.

■ Messaging Settings

● For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
● For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. ● Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ■ 🗐: Delivered, 🗐: Unknown, 🗐: Failed ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select priority ➡ ●
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply Request* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Forward NG* or *Delete NG* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Locking message with Quiz	Start Here **In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Quiz* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ See below** ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets. **Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)** Select question ➡ ● ➡ *Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Select number ➡ ● ➡ Enter/edit option ➡ ● ➡ Enter/edit all options ➡ Select answer ➡ Y ➡ B ➡ B ● May be unavailable for some questions. **Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)** Select question ➡ ● ➡ *Match Characters* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ● ➡ B ● May be unavailable for some questions. **Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)** *<Create Original>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ● ➡ *Selection* ➡ ● ➡ Select number ➡ ● ➡ Enter option ➡ ● ➡ Complete entry ➡ Select answer ➡ Y ➡ B ➡ B **Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)** *<Create Original>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter question ➡ ● ➡ *Match Characters* ➡ ● ➡ Enter answer ➡ ● ➡ B
Editing assigned Quiz	In Mail Composition window, B ➡ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Quiz* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Question* ➡ ● ➡ Edit question/options/answer ➡ B (B again after editing options) ● Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

5

Messaging

5-21

Lowering size limit for outgoing S! Mail messages	In Mail Composition window, ☺ ➜ *Messaging Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Create Msg. Size* ➜ ● ➜ *300KB* ➜ ●
Designating/ editing reply-to address	[Start Here] In Mail Composition window, ☺ ➜ *Messaging Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Reply to Settings* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Designating *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ● ➜ Select method ➜ ● ➜ Select/enter address ➜ ●
	Editing *Edit Address* ➜ ● ➜ Edit ➜ ●
Changing Server sent message storage limit	In Mail Composition window, ☺ ➜ *Messaging Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Expiry Time* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ● ● Available for SMS only.

■ Attachments

Changing attached image size	Select attached file ➜ ☺ ➜ *Resize Picture* ➜ ● ➜ Select size ➜ ● ● May be unavailable for some images.
Capturing/ recording and attaching	[Start Here] Select attachment field ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Still Images *Picture* ➜ ● ➜ *Take Picture* ➜ ● ➜ ● to shoot ➜ ●
	Video *Video* ➜ ● ➜ *Record Video* ➜ ● ➜ ● to start recording ➜ ● to stop ➜ *Accept* ➜ ● ➜ Select storage media ➜ ●
	Sounds *Sound* ➜ ● ➜ *Record Voice* ➜ ● ➜ ● to start recording ➜ ● to stop ➜ *Accept* ➜ ● ➜ Select storage media ➜ ●

Set Auto Play File	Select attached file ➜ ☺ ➜ *Set Auto Play File* ➜ ● ➜ *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ● ➜ *Enter Message* ➜ ● ➜ Enter comment ➜ ● ➜ 📇 ➜ ⓨ ● Not available for PC Mail.

■ Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic Mail from templates	**Opening Templates from Messaging Menu** ☺ ➜ *Templates* ➜ ● ➜ Select template ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⓨ ● Template size may change when used for creating messages.
	Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window In Mail Composition window, ☺ ➜ *Launch Template* ➜ ● ➜ Select template ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ ⓨ ● If message text has already been entered, follow onscreen prompt to insert it.
Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window, 🔟 (Long) ➜ ☺ ➜ Select start point ➜ ● ➜ Highlight text range ➜ ● ➜ *COLOR*, *SIZE* or *EFFECT* ➜ ● ➜ Set ➜ ●
Changing text color	In text entry window, 🔟 (Long) ➜ *COLOR* ➜ ● ➜ Select color ➜ ● ➜ Enter text
Inserting background sound	[Start Here] In text entry window, 🔟 (Long) ➜ *INSERT* ➜ ● ➜ See below
	Inserting *BGM Sound* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ●
	Deleting *Delete BGM* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●

5 Messaging

Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window, 🔄 (Long) ➡ *INSERT* ➡ ● ➡ *Flash* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, ✉ ➡ *Preview* ➡ ● ● When Graphic Mail window is open, press ✐ first.
Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon ➡ 🔳 ● When Graphic Mail window is open, press ✐ first.
Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window, 🔄 (Long) ➡ *INSERT* ➡ ● ➡ *Line* ➡ ●
Flashing text	**Start Here** In text entry window, 🔄 (Long) ➡ **See below** **Flashing** *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text **Canceling** ✉ ➡ Select start point ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink* ➡ ● ➡ *Blink Off* ➡ ●
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window, 🔄 (Long) ➡ *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ *Alignment* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ Enter text

Receiving/Opening Messages

■ Receiving

Accessing new mail out of Standby	✉ (Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	✉ ➡ ✉ ● When a PC Mail Account exists, select *S! Mail* and press ●. ● Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	✉ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Retrieving remaining portions	**Via Mail Notice** In message list, select Mail Notice ➡ ● ➡ ✐ ● If retrieve size options appear, select one and press ●. **Via Server Mail List** ✉ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Retrieving all Server Mail	**Start Here** ✉ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Directly from Server** *Retrieve All* ➡ ● **Via Server Mail List** *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Retrieve All* ➡ ● ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

5

Messaging

5-23

■ Message Window

Saving attachments to Data Folder	In message window, select file ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Save to Data Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ● ● For templates, *Save as Template* appears. (Omit file name entry step.)
Installing attached widgets	In message window, select file ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Install Attach* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ●
Using attachments	Start Here In message window, select file ▶ ⊠ ▶ **See below** **As Wallpaper** *Set as Wallpaper* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ● ▶ *Vertical* or *Horizontal* ▶ ● ▶ ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option. **As Ringtone/Ringvideo** *Set as Ringtone* or *Set as Ring Video* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Save here* ▶ ● ▶ Select item ▶ ● ● For *For New Message* or *For New PC Mail*, enter ring time and press ●.
Playing slides	In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Slide Play* ▶ ● ● A slide consists of message text with attachments.

Saving to Phone Book	**Saving Sender Address** In message window, ⊠ ▶ *Save Address* ▶ ● ▶ Select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *As New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete other fields ▶ ⊠ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*. **Saving Linked Info** In message window, select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Save to Phone Book* or *Save Address* ▶ ● ▶ *As New Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Complete other fields ▶ ⊠ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Using linked info	**Dialing Numbers** In message window, select number ▶ ● ▶ *Call* or *Video Call* ▶ ● **Sending Messages** In message window, select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Create Message* ▶ ● ▶ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ▶ ● ▶ Complete message ▶ ⊠ ● For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step. **Accessing Internet Sites** In message window, select URL ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ● Choose *Select Br.* to select browser. **Saving Location Information URLs** In message window, select URL ▶ ● ▶ *RegisterMyLocation* ▶ ● ▶ *Name* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ ⊠ **Setting Location Information as Destination** In message window, select URL ▶ ● ▶ *Set to Destination* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

5

Messaging

5-24

Copying text	Start Here In message window, ⊠ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Sender/Recipient Number/Address *Address* ➡ ● ➡ Select number/address ➡ ●
	Subject or Message Text *Subject* or *Message Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Looking up message text words in dictionaries	In message window, ⊠ ➡ *Copy & Search Dict.* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ● ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ●
Jumping to message top/bottom	In message window, ⊠ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Jump* ➡ ● ➡ *Jump to Top* or *Jump to Bottom* ➡ ●
Deleting attachments	In message window, select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Remove File* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	In message window, ⊠ ➡ *Report Spam* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ● Signature is not inserted automatically. ● Not available for PC Mail.

■ **Replying**

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window, ⊠ ➡ *Reply-To Addr.* ➡ ● ➡ Select type/option ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⓨ
Opening received message for reference	In message window, ⊠ ➡ *Rep. with View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⓨ

Replying quickly using fixed text	**Editing Quick Reply Text** ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Quick Reply* ➡ ● ➡ Select text ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●
	Using Quick Reply In message window, ⓨ (Long) ➡ Select text ➡ ●
Replying to messages automatically	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Reply* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Saving Recipients *Address Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ ⓨ ➡ ⓨ ● Select saved recipient and press ● to edit number/address.
	Editing Reply Text *Reply Message* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ● Edit text for each mode.
	Activating Auto Reply *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Replies are sent via S! Mail. ● Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated. ● Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or outside Japan.

5

Messaging

5-25

Managing Messages

■ Message List

Selecting multiple messages	**Selecting** In message list, ⊙ ➡ Select message ➡ ● (✓) ● To uncheck, press ● again.
	Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once In message list, ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Check in Block* ➡ ●
	Unchecking All In message list, ⊠ ➡ *Unselect All* ➡ ●
Color-tagging messages	In message list, ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Color Label* ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ●
Sorting messages	In message list, ⊠ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening sender/ recipient details	In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *View Mail Address* ➡ ● ➡ Select sender or recipient ➡ ●
Checking memory status	⊠ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● Press ⊙ to check memory status by service (SMS & S! Mail or PC Mail). ● USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.
Opening properties	In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Message Details* ➡ ●
Changing template name display	⊠ ➡ *Templates* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Item Displayed* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●

Saving SMS messages to USIM Card	In message list, select SMS message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *SIM Sync* ➡ ● ● Available for compatible USIM Cards.
Changing received message status (read/unread)	In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch to Unread* or *Switch to Read* ➡ ●

■ Deleting Messages

Deleting messages	**One Message** In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Alternatively, delete an open message.
	All Messages In message list, ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* or *Except Locked Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
	All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), ⊠ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	In message list, select Mail Notice ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	[Start Here] ⊠ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⦿. **One Message** Select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ **All Messages** ⊠ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	[Start Here] ⊠ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below **All Retrieved Messages** *Except New Msg.* ➡ ⦿ **All Messages** *Delete All* ➡ ⦿

■ Folders

Moving messages manually	In message list, select message ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Move to Folder* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select folder ➡ ⦿ ● If sort messages confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⦿; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.
Renaming folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⦿ ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.

Deleting folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ● If delete message confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ⦿. ● When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Adding folders	In folder list, ⊠ ➡ *Create New Folder* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⦿ ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Moving folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Relocate Folder* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select target location ➡ ⦿
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	In folder list, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *To All Read* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Protect* ➡ ⦿ ● To cancel protection, select *Not Protect* and press ⦿ in the steps above.
Canceling Secret	Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Unset Secret* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿

5

Messaging

5-27

■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Classify* ▶ ● ● Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Sorting spam by setting keys	⊠ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *General Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Anti Spam Measures* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Individual(Common)* ▶ ● (☑) ▶ ⊠ ▶ Select blank entry ▶ ● ▶ Select key ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address/subject ▶ ● ▶ ⊻ ▶ ⊻ ▶ ●
Editing/deleting sort keys	[Start Here] In folder list, select folder ▶ ⊠ ▶ *My Folders* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ See below **Editing Sender/Recipient Key** ⊠ ▶ *Replace* ▶ ● ▶ Select method ▶ ● ▶ Select/enter number/address ▶ ● ▶ ⊻ **Editing Subject Key** ● ▶ Edit ▶ ● ▶ ⊻ **Deleting an Entry** ⊠ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ⊻ **Deleting All Entries** ⊠ ▶ *Clear All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ⊻

■ Chat Folders

Deleting folders	⊠ ▶ *Chat Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Select folder ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Delete Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ● If delete message confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●. ● When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.

Deleting all messages	⊠ ▶ *Chat Folder* ▶ ● ▶ Select folder ▶ ● ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Manage Msg.* ▶ ● ▶ *Delete All* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Resetting Chat Folders	⊠ ▶ *Chat Folder* ▶ ● ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Reset* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	⊠ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Set Mail Group* ▶ ● ▶ Select Group ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Edit Name* ▶ ● ▶ Enter name ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	[Start Here] ⊠ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Set Mail Group* ▶ ● ▶ Select Group ▶ See below **Mail Groups** ⊠ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● **Group Members** ● ▶ Select member ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Remove Entry* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ⊻ ● Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.
Changing Mail Group members	⊠ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Set Mail Group* ▶ ● ▶ Select Group ▶ ● ▶ Select member ▶ ⊠ ▶ *Re-assign Entry* ▶ ● ▶ Select entry ▶ ● ▶ Select number or mail address ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ● ▶ ⊻

Messaging

5

Using Messages

Forwarding messages	In message window, ⊚ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ ● Attached files are forwarded. ● To forward SMS messages, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press ●.
Sending from Drafts	⊚ ➡ *Drafts* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊻
Sending unsent messages	[Start Here] ⊚ ➡ *Unsent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊚ ➡ See below **Sending without Editing** *Resend* ➡ ● **Edit & Send** *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊻
Using sent messages	⊚ ➡ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Edit & Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊻
Saving schedules from message list	In message list, select message ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ *Save to Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Enter subject ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Enter start/end date/time ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⊻ ● Source message is accessible from schedule window (via *Related Mail* in Options menu).

Forwarding Server Mail	**Via Mail Notice** In message list, select Mail Notice ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ● ➡ *Notifi. Forward* (forward Mail Notice text only) or *Remote Forward* ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ **Via Server Mail List** ⊚ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Remote Forward* ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ⊻ ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Opening Server Mail properties	⊚ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mail List* ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Message Details* ➡ ● ● If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Checking Server Mail message count and volume	⊚ ➡ *Server Mail Box* ➡ ● ➡ *Mailbox Volume* ➡ ●

5

Messaging

5-29

General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●
Changing message list view	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Message List View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Address View* ➡ ● ➡ *Show All* ➡ ●
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Received Msg. View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● *Folder View by Account* is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Sent Msg. View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● *Folder View by Account* is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Received Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ *Not Auto Del* ➡ ●
Changing spam report recipient	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Report Spam* ➡ ● ➡ Edit address ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Resend* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Designating/ editing reply-to address	**Start Here** ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply to Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Designating** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ● **Editing** *Edit Address* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Selecting quote option	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply With Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Sending Status* ➡ ● ➡ *Off(Background)* ➡ ●

5

Messaging

Deleting Permitted List entries	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send/Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrictions Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Individual Address* ➡ ● ➡ *Permitted List* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	One Entry *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Entries *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

General Settings (Receive)

■ Message Notice & Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Notice* ➡ ● ➡ *Secret Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *No Response* ➡ ●
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Notice* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Showing New Message Window *On Active Screen* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Selecting Scrolling Notice Option *View Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
	Muting Alert Sound *Alert Sound* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling Animation View	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Animation View* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

■ Feeling Mail

Hiding graphics above Information window	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Feeling* ➡ ● ➡ *Idle Screen Info.* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing illumination settings	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Feeling* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Illumi.* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting Ringtones to Control Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Sound* ➡ ●
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select category, e.g., *Happy/Glad* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● • Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*.
	Disabling Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Selecting Vibration option	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Feeling* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

5

Messaging

Changing ringtone settings	Start Here ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Receive* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Feeling* ➡ ● ➡ *Ringtone* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Muting Ringer *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Changing Ringtones *Assign Tone* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ●
	Changing Duration *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●

S! Mail Settings

■ Automatic Retrieval

Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	Start Here ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Message DL* ➡ ● ➡ *Condition(Auto)* ➡ ● ➡ *Selected Mail* ➡ ☺ ➡ See below
	One Entry (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ ☺ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☽
	All Entries (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ ☺ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☽
	One Entry (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ☺ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☽
	All Custom Entries (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ☺ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☽

■ Attachments

Disabling image auto-resize	☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Appearance* ➡ ● ➡ *Normal* ➡ ● ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play	☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Play File* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* or *Sounds* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ● ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send File Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Attach Only* ➡ ● ● Setting applies to PC Mail as well. ● Camera settings (Auto Save and Background Save) take priority when opening Mail Composition window via newly captured image or newly recorded video.

■ Message Size

Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size	☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Msg. Size* ➡ ● ➡ *300KB* or *Confirm(When exceed 300KB)* ➡ ● ● Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.
Limiting incoming S! Mail message size	☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Message DL* ➡ ● ➡ *DL Size Limit* ➡ ● ➡ *Restricted(300KB)* ➡ ● ● Exceeding attachments are reduced (images) or deleted (other files) at Server.
Selecting size to which images are reduced when attaching	☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Auto Resize* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Set to *Ask Each Time* to select size every time an image is attached.

PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *All Contents* ➡ ●
Retrieving new messages automatically	[Start Here] ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Check New Mail* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Enabling Automatic Retrieval
	Check New Mail ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Select account ➡ ● (☑) ➡ ⊙ ➡ ● ● Setting Check New Mail to *On* may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan. ● Handset does not check for new messages between 10:00 PM and 6:00 AM; change/cancel Inactive Time as needed.
	Enabling Automatic Retrieval Outside Japan
	Abroad ➡ ● ➡ *Enable* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges.
	Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval
	Interval ➡ ● ➡ Select interval ➡ ●
	Changing Inactive Time
	Inactive Time ➡ ● ➡ *Start Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter start time ➡ ● ➡ *End Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter end time ➡ ●
	Canceling Inactive Time
	Inactive Time ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	In folder list, select PC Mail folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Retrieve New* ➡ ●
Disabling automatic word wrap	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Word wrap* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	[Start Here] ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *DL All From List* ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	Selecting Sender Types
	Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ ⊙
	Specifying Addresses
	Individual Address ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
	Specifying Domains (Direct Entry)
	Receive by the Domain ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter domain ➡ ● ➡ ⊙

5

Messaging

5-33

Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *DL All From List* ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	One Entry (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
	All Entries (Mail Address) *Individual Address* ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
	One Entry (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
	All Entries (Domain) *Receive by the Domain* ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
Restricting complete message retrieval by size	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *Max DL Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select account ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Effective when PC Mail DL is set to *All Contents* or *DL All From List*.

SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Expiry Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Changing SMS Server number	Start Here ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Center* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Editing *Setting1(Default)* to *Setting3* ➡ ● ➡ Edit number ➡ ● ● Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.
	Deleting *Setting2* or *Setting3* ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Activating *Setting2* or *Setting3* ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set Default* ➡ ● ● Activated number moves to *Setting1(Default)* and shifts the others down.
Changing character encoding for composing messages	⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *SMS Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ● ➡ Select encoding ➡ ●

5

Messaging

5-34

Sending Messages

❓ **Cannot enter message text or attach files**

● Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

❓ *Sending failure* appears in **Information window**

● To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ○

❓ **Unsent message is not resent automatically**

● Auto Resend makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Resend unsent message(s) manually.

❓ **Set Auto Play File cannot be set**

● Apply to one file per message.
● Not available for Graphic Mail.
● May be unavailable for some files.

❓ **Messaging Settings are not applied**

● Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
● Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
● Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

❓ **Cannot set Messaging Settings**

● These settings cannot be applied to a message simultaneously (select one): Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.

❓ **Signature is not inserted automatically**

● Auto Insert is available for S! Mail only.

❓ **Cannot cancel sent messages**

● Short messages may not be canceled.
● Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

❓ **Cannot send PC Mail**

● Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Account* ➡ ● ➡ Select account ➡ ● ➡ *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ *Sender Auth.* ➡ ● ➡ *SMTP Auth.* ➡ ✉ ➡ *User Name* or *Password* ➡ ●
● Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup.

5

Messaging

5-35

Incoming Messages

Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.

A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose *Yes* and press ●. Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
  - The message was filtered as spam
  - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

Message text appears distorted

- Follow these steps to change encoding:
  [Message Window] ⊚ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ●
  ➡ *Select option* ➡ ●

Handling Messages

Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

Cannot receive messages

- If ✉ appears, memory is full; delete messages (**P.5-26**).
- If *out* appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.

6

Internet

Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser or Direct Browser.

● Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
● For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**).
● Outside Japan, Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser cannot be used over Wi-Fi.

Transmission/Information Fees
Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

Security
Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Opening Secure Pages
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to proceed.
● When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GMO GlobalSign, RSA Security, SECOM Trust Systems and Comodo Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced

● Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) ● Clearing authentication information (And more on **P.6-11**)
● Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on **P.6-18**)

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai sites via 3G Network or Wi-Fi.

- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use Yahoo! Keitai over Wi-Fi.
- To use Wi-Fi, complete related settings beforehand.
- Within registered access point range, handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible; switch between 3G and Wi-Fi manually.
- Network does not switch to Wi-Fi automatically if Wi-Fi signal reception is poor or after switching it to 3G manually.
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.

1 ⊙ ➜ **Connection starts**

Cursor
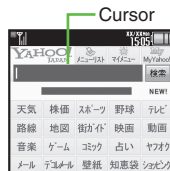
Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press ⊙.

2 **Highlight menu item** ➜ ⊙
- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat **2** to open additional links.

3 🔟 ➜ *Yes* ➜ ⊙ ➜ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages
[Internet Page] ⊙ ➜ **Previous page opens**
- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
[Internet Page] ⊙ ➜ *Forward* ➜ ⊙
Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
[Internet Page] ⊙ ➜ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➜ ⊙
User Authentication
Enter user ID or password ➜ ⊙ ➜ ⊙
Accessing メニューリスト Directly
⊙ ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ⊙ ➜ *Menu List* ➜ ⊙
Switching between 3G and Wi-Fi Manually
[Internet Page] ⊙ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ⊙ ➜ *Switch Wi-Fi/3G* ➜ ⊙ ➜ **Select network** ➜ ⊙

Advanced

●Switching browsers (**P.6-11**)

Playing Media during Download

Play files while they transfer from the server (progressive download) or stream media files.

- Save progressive download files of 10 MB or less after playback as needed.
- These media files cannot be saved even after playback:
  - Progressive download files larger than 10 MB
  - Streaming media files
- Fast forward/rewind is not available for progressive download files larger than 10 MB.
- Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi) even while playback is paused.

1 **On a page, select file ➡ ●**
  - Playback starts.

Pausing Playback
  Press ●
  - To resume playback, press ●.
  - Progressive download continues even while playback is paused. For files larger than 10 MB, progressive download stops if playback is paused for a period of time.

Stopping Playback
  [MENU] ➡ *Back* ➡ ●

Stopping Progressive Download
  - For files of 10 MB or less, progressive download continues even when playback is paused or stopped. To stop download, press [MENU] to return to the previous page, then press [MENU] again.

Playback Sound
  - Sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of 🟦Sound Output setting.

Using History

1 **● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ●**

  |▼▮| |
  | History |
  | 🕐 スポーツ情報 |
  | 🔍 ニュース |

2 **Select record ➡ ● ➡ Connection starts**
  - Corresponding page opens.

3 **[📞] ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Page closes**

Entering URLs Directly

1 **● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ ●**

  |▼▮| |
  | Enter URL |
  | .a   7/1024 |
  | http:// |

2 **Enter URL ➡ ● ➡ Connection starts**
  - Corresponding page opens.

3 **[📞] ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Page closes**

Advanced

🔧 ●Using previously entered URLs ●Deleting History records ●Sorting History records (And more on **P.6-11**)
  ●Customizing media playback settings (And more on **P.6-15**)

Browsing PC Sites

View PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser or Direct Browser. (Direct Browser requires Wi-Fi connection.)

- To use Wi-Fi, complete related settings beforehand.
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- When using PC Site Browser within registered access point range, handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible; switch between 3G and Wi-Fi manually.
- Network does not switch to Wi-Fi automatically if Wi-Fi signal reception is poor or after switching it to 3G manually.
- Browsing PC sites via PC Site Browser may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi.
- PC Site Browser and Direct Browser share Bookmarks, Saved Pages, History records, etc.

1. ● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ●

2. *PC Site Browser* or *Direct Browser* ➜ ●

3. *Homepage* ➜ ● ➜ **Connection starts**

   Pointer

   Internet Page

   - Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
   - If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
   - To disconnect, press ⊙.

4. **Highlight menu item** ➜ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.
   - Repeat 4 to open additional links.

5. ⊡ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **Page closes**

Direct Browser
- Use this Wi-Fi-based browser to view PC sites without using SoftBank 3G Network service.

Returning to Previous Pages
  [Internet Page] ⊙ ➜ **Previous page opens**
  ■ Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
  [Internet Page] ⊠ ➜ *Forward* ➜ ●

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home
  [Internet Page] ⊠ ➜ *Homepage* ➜ ●

User Authentication
  Enter user ID or password ➜ ● ➜ ⊙

Using History
  In 3, *History* ➜ ● ➜ **Select record** ➜ ●

Entering URLs Directly
  In 3, *Enter URL* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter URL** ➜ ●

Hiding Softkeys
  [Internet Page] ⊠ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Softkey Area* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●

Switching between 3G and Wi-Fi Manually (PC Site Browser)
  [Internet Page] ⊠ ➜ *Convenient Functions* ➜ ● ➜ *Switch Wi-Fi/3G* ➜ ● ➜ **Select network** ➜ ●

6

Internet

Advanced

Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, use 😊 to scroll pages.
Long Press 😊 to scroll continuously.
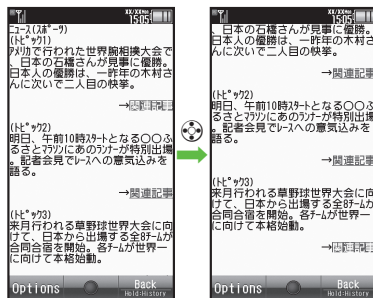
Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press 🔘 to switch active frame.
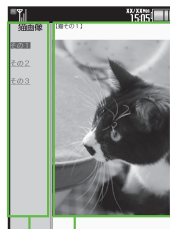
Frames

● In pointer navigation, point to a frame and press ● to select it.
● Otherwise, use 😊 to select one.
● Alternatively, tap a frame to select it.

Viewing Single Frame
[Internet Page] Select frame ➡ ☺ ➡
Convenient Functions ➡ ● ➡
Frame In ➡ ●
■ To return, press 🔙.

Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

■ **Opening a New Tab**

1 **On a page, select menu item ➡ ☺ ➡ *Tab Menu* ➡ ●**

2 ***Open in New Tab* ➡ ●**

Tab

■ **Switching Tabs**

1 **⚹ (Long) ➡ ⊙ Select tab ➡ ●**

● In pointer navigation, point to a tab and press ● to open it.
● Alternatively, tap a tab to open it.

Closing Tabs
⚹ (Long) ➡ ⊙ Select tab ➡ ● ➡
☺ ➡ *Tab Menu* ➡ ● ➡ *Close Tab*
or *Close All Other Tabs* ➡ ●

Advanced

📖 ●Looking up copied words in dictionaries ●Saving files to Data Folder ●Changing Font Size ●Enlarging specific areas ●Disabling automatic image display/sound playback ●Changing scroll unit (And more on **P.6-12** - **6-14**)

6 Internet

Selecting Items in Enlarged View

Enlarge area to select items with finger.

1. **On a page, Long Touch area**
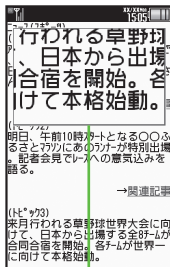

```
Enlarged View
```

2. **Drag finger to highlight item in enlarged view ➡ Release**

Enlarging Areas in Pointer Navigation
[Internet Page] Point to area ➡
7⌨ (Long)
- Use ✪ to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press ● to execute it.
- To close enlarged view, press a key other than ✪.

Selecting Text

Activate pointer navigation to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries.

- Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.
- Follow these steps to use a dictionary:

1. **On a page, point to first character ➡ ● (Long)**
- Drag Mode is activated.

2. **Highlight text range**
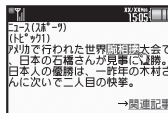
3. **●**
- Text range remains unchanged even when pointer is moved.

4. **[辞書◎] ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●**
- Dictionary opens with text inserted.

5. ***Search* ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ●**

Starting Over
After ③, point to first character ➡ ●
➡ **From ②**

6

Internet

6-7

Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.

Text Entry Field
Buttons
Menu List
Command Button
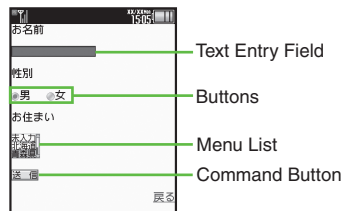
Text Entry

1 **On a page, select text entry field ➜ ⦿**

2 **Enter text ➜ ⦿**
● Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)
[Internet page] Select text entry field
➜ ⦿ ➜ ◎ ➜ *Insert/Font Size* ➜ ⦿
➜ *Input Memory* ➜ ⦿ ➜ Select text
➜ ⦿

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 **On a page, select menu list field ➜ ⦿**

2 **Select item ➜ ⦿**

When Multiple Selection is Supported
● Select items as needed and press [CLEAR].

Page Item Indicators

■ **Selection Items**
Buttons ● or boxes ☐ appear.

1 **On a page, select button or box ➜ ⦿**

● ●/☐ changes to ●/✔.

■ **Execution Items**
Execute the assigned command.

1 **On a page, select command ➜ ⦿**

6-8

Internet

6

Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

1. On a page, ☺ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●
   - *<Add New Entry>* appears in gray for unsavable pages.

2. Check/edit URL ➡ ●

3. Check/edit title ➡ ●

4. *Save* ➡ ●

Opening Bookmarks

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ●

   ![Bookmarks screen showing <Add New Entry>, 今日の天気, ニュース]

2. Select title ➡ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Bookmarks Lists
After ❶, ☺ ➡ *Change List* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●

Opening Bookmarks Online
[Internet Page] ☺ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ●

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

1. On a page, ☺ ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
   - *Save* appears only for savable pages.

2. Check/edit title ➡ ●

Opening Saved Pages

1. ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ●

   ![Saved Pages screen showing Yahoo! page]

2. Select page ➡ ●
   - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Saved Pages Lists
After ❶, ☺ ➡ *Change List* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●

Opening Saved Pages Online
[Internet Page] ☺ ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ *Open List* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ●

6
Internet

Advanced

🔧 ●Deleting titles ●Editing titles ●Changing title order ●Sorting titles into folders ●Deleting pages ●Editing page titles ●Changing page order (And more on **P.6-15** - **6-16**)

Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites.
Packet transmission fees apply (except when handling RSS feeds via Wi-Fi).

Subscribing to RSS Feeds

Indicator below appears for RSS-compatible sites.

RSS Indicator

Available for PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

1. **On a compatible page, ⊠ ➜ *Register In RSS Feed* ➜ ●**

2. **Select feed ➜ ● (☐/✓) ➜ Complete selection ➜ ⊠**

3. ***Save* ➜ ●**
   - Choose *Yes* to update immediately or *No* and press ●.

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible. Available for PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

1. **On a page, select icon ➜ ●**

2. ***Yes* ➜ ● ➜ *Save* ➜ ●**

Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:

1. **● ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ ●**

2. ***PC Site Browser* ➜ ● ➜ *RSS Feed* ➜ ●**

RSS Feed List

3. ***Reload All* ➜ ● ➜ ●**

4. ***Yes* or *No* ➜ ●**

5. **Select feed ➜ ●**

Title List

6. **Select title ➜ ●**
   - Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds
[RSS Feed List] Select feed ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Reload* ➜ ● ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* or *No* ➜ ●

Accessing Source Sites
[Title List] Select title ➜ ● ➜ Select linked title ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* or *No* ➜ ●

Advanced

ⓑ ●Disabling feed updates ●Sorting feeds into folders ●Deleting feeds ●Sorting feeds ●Opening feed properties ●Exchanging feeds with other devices ●Sending feeds via mail (**P.6-17**)

Connecting & Browsing

■ General

Switching browsers	On a page, ☺ ➡ *Switch Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *This Page* or *Linked Page* ➡ ● ➡ Select browser ➡ ● ● A confirmation may appear when switching to PC Site Browser.
Using previously entered URLs	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Yahoo! Keitai** *Enter URL* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *URL Entry Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select URL ➡ ● ➡ ● **PC Site Browser & Direct Browser** *PC Site Browser* or *Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *URL Entry Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select URL ➡ ● ➡ ●

■ History

Follow these steps to switch History lists:

☺ ➡ *Change List* ➡ ● ➡ Select browser ➡ ●

Deleting History records	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Record** Select record ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Records** ☺ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Opening History properties	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ☺ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Sorting History records	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ *By Domain* or *By Date* ➡ ●
Sending History records via mail	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ☺ ➡ *Send URL* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⓨ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

■ Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➡ ●.

PC Site Browser (or *Direct Browser*) ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* (or *Set Direct Browser*) ➡ ●

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Cache* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Clearing cookies	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Cookies* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Clearing authentication information	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Auth Info* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

6-11
Internet
6

Page Operations

■ All Browsers

Using linked info	**Dialing Numbers** On a page, highlight number ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Call* or *Video Call* ➡ ⚫
	Sending Messages On a page, highlight number or mail address ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Create Message* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Complete message ➡ ⓨ
Copying text	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Copy Text* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select first character ➡ ⚫ ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ⚫
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Copy & Search Dict.* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select first character ➡ ⚫ ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Search* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select word, etc. ➡ ⚫
Using Web Search	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Web Search* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Enter search text ➡ ⚫
Searching current page	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Search* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Enter search text ➡ ⚫ ● Press ⚫ to jump to next search result, if any.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Jump In Page* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Page Top* or *Page Bottom* ➡ ⚫
Opening page properties	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Details* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select item ➡ ⚫
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Send URL* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Complete message ➡ ⓨ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Handling Flash® files	[Start Here] On a page, ✉ ➡ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Flash®Menu* ➡ ⚫ ➡ See below
	Pausing/Playing *Pause*, *Resume* or *Replay* ➡ ⚫
	Selecting Image Quality *Quality* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select quality ➡ ⚫
Saving files to Data Folder	[Start Here] On a page, ✉ ➡ *Save Items* ➡ ⚫ ➡ See below
	Files on Page Select file ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Save* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ⚫ ● Some files are saved automatically. ● End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand. ● Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.
	Background Images *Save Background Image* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Save* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ⚫
Updating page content	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Reload* ➡ ⚫ ● To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.
Changing encoding to read garbled text	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⚫ ➡ *Char-code* ➡ ⚫ ➡ Select option ➡ ⚫
Opening function shortcuts	On a page, ✉ ➡ *Help* ➡ ⚫

6
Internet

■ **Yahoo! Keitai**

| **Changing Font Size** | On a page, $\boxed{3}$ (Long) to enlarge or $\boxed{1}$ (Long) to reduce |

■ **PC Site Browser & Direct Browser**

Switching view	On a page, $\textcircled{\scriptsize{\sf M}}$ ➜ *PC Screen* or *Small Screen* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ● In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page, $\boxed{3}$ (Long) to enlarge or $\boxed{1}$ (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page, $\boxed{5}$ (Long) ➜ Quick Movement map appears ➜ Select target location ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Enlarging specific areas	On a page, point to area ➜ $\boxed{7}$ (Long) ● Use $\textcircled{\odot}$ to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to execute it. ● To close enlarged view, press a key other than $\textcircled{\odot}$.

Internet Page Settings

■ **All Browsers**

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

PC Site Browser (or *Direct Browser*) ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *PC Site Browser Settings* (or *Set Direct Browser*) ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	[Start Here] $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Downloads* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ See below
	Image Display *Images* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Do not Show* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Sound Playback *Sounds* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Do not Play* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Changing Font Size	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Font Size* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ Select size ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Using pointer navigation	[Start Here] $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Cursor Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ See below
	Activating *Cursor Mode Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Normal Mode* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Changing Pointer Speed *Speed Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ Select speed ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	$\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Yahoo!* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Browser Settings* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Download to* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➜ *Prefer Card* ➜ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ● Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.

■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●

■ PC Site Browser & Direct Browser

For Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ●.
Direct Browser ➡ ● ➡ *Set Direct Browser* ➡ ●

Showing navigation map for continuous scroll	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Page Navigation* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Changing scroll unit	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●

■ PC Site Browser

Hiding PC Site Browser messages	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Warning Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

■ Direct Browser

Restricting Direct Browser use	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Browser Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Administrator Code ➡ ●

Setting up proxy	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Proxy Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Administrator Code ➡ ● ➡ *Use* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Entering Address *Proxy Address* ➡ ● ➡ Enter address ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
	Entering Port Number *Port Number* ➡ ● ➡ Enter number ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
	Specifying Addresses to Bypass Proxy *Apply Address* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Enter address ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
Editing proxy settings	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Proxy Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Administrator Code ➡ ● ➡ *Use* ➡ ⊛ ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ⓨ
Changing home page	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Homepage Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ●
Setting search engine URLs	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Direct Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *Search Page* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Adding *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ●
	Changing Select URL ➡ ●
	Editing Select URL ➡ ⊛ ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●

Streaming & Progressive Download

■ General

Customizing media playback settings	[Start Here] **During playback,** ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **See below**
	Changing Playback Size *Display Size* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select size** ➡ ⦿ ● Playback size may not change depending on file.
	Setting Backlight Status *Backlight* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select option** ➡ ⦿ ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight settings.
	Adjusting Sound Effects *Sound Effects* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select effect** ➡ ⦿

■ Streaming

Streaming from Media Player	[Start Here] ⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Streaming* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **See below**
	Resuming from Stopped Point *Last Played* ➡ ⦿
	Using Bookmarks *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select title** ➡ ⦿
	Using History *History* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select record** ➡ ⦿
Switching networks during media playback	**During playback,** ☺ ➡ *Switch Wi-Fi/3G* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select network** ➡ ⦿

Bookmarks

Deleting titles	[Start Here] ⦿ ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **See below**
	One Title **Select title** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
	All Titles ☺ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Editing titles	⦿ ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select title** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Title:* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Enter title** ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ
Editing bookmarked URLs	⦿ ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select title** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *URL:* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Edit** ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	⦿ ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select title** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Send* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *As Message* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⓨ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Changing title order	⦿ ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select title** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select target location** ➡ ⦿
Opening title properties	⦿ ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Select title** ➡ ☺ ➡ *Details* ➡ ⦿

Sorting titles into folders	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**		**Saved Pages**	

	Creating Folders
	✉ ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Moving to Folders
	Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ●
	Moving from Folders
	Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ●
	Renaming Folders
	Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting All Titles within a Folder
	Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Deleting Folders
	Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Saved Pages

	Start Here ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
Deleting pages	**One Page**
	Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Pages
	✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Editing page titles	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter title ➡ ●
Changing page order	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Opening page properties	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Switching page list view	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *Saved Pages* ➡ ● ➡ Select page ➡ ✉ ➡ *List View* or *Preview View* ➡ ●

RSS Feeds

For Direct Browser, select *Direct Browser* instead of *PC Site Browser*.

Disabling feed updates	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Restrict Update* ➡ ●
Sorting feeds into folders	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Creating Folders ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Moving to Folders Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move* ➡ ●
	Renaming Folders Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Folders Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting feeds	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	One Entry Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Entries ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Alternatively, perform *Delete RSS Feed List* in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings or Set Direct Browser) to delete all feeds.
Sorting feeds	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening feed properties	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Exchanging feeds with other devices	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Exporting All Feeds *Export All* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ●
	Importing (Adding Feeds) *Import* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●
	Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds) *Import* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●
Sending feeds via mail	● ➡ *Yahoo!* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ● ➡ *RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ Select feed ➡ ✉ ➡ *Manage RSS Feed* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⓨ

6 Internet

6-17

Security Settings

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➔ ●.
PC Site Browser (or *Direct Browser*) ➔ ● ➔ *PC Site Browser Settings* (or *Set Direct Browser*) ➔ ●

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Manufacture Number* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ● ● Not available for Direct Browser.
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Send Referer* ➔ ● ➔ *Not Send* ➔ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Cookies* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Script Settings* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Hiding confirmations before entering/ exiting secure pages	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Secure Prompt* ➔ ● ➔ *Do not Show* ➔ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Root Certificates* ➔ ● ➔ Select certificate ➔ ●
Changing validity of entered user ID/ password	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Keep Auth Info* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● ● *Per Browsing* retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. *On* retains such authentication information even after powering handset off. ● Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.
Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Security Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Restrict Ajax* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●

Resetting

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➔ ●.
PC Site Browser (or *Direct Browser*) ➔ ● ➔ *PC Site Browser Settings* (or *Set Direct Browser*) ➔ ●

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Initialized Browser* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ● ● For Direct Browser, enter Administrator Code instead of Handset Code.
Restoring default handset settings	● ➔ *Yahoo!* ➔ ● ➔ *Browser Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Reset Settings* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ● ● For Direct Browser, enter Administrator Code instead of Handset Code.

Connecting & Browsing

What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations

Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- Multi Job may be active. When switching between browsers, additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.

7

Digital TV

Basics

940SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book, etc.

TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

Important Digital TV Usage Notes

- 940SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programs may not be viewable or record properly when:
  - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
  - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
  - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
  - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
  - Near railroad tracks or highways
  - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable

7

Digital TV

Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:

1 📺

> Channels unset.
> Set now?
> Yes
> No
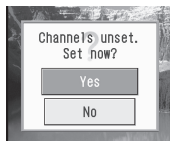
● Setup confirmation appears.

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

> Select Region
> Hokkaido/Tohoku
> Hokuriku/Koshin'etsu
> Kanto
> Tokai
> Kansai
> Chugoku
> Shikoku
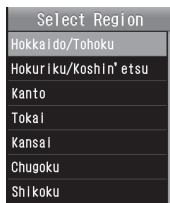
3 Select region ➡ ●

4 Select prefecture ➡ ● ➡ Select locality ➡ ●

> Tokyo
> Tokyo 23 Wards
> set.

● After setup, channel list appears.

5 ●

> Saved Tokyo 23
> Wards in Area 1.

● To watch TV, select *Digital TV* and press ●.

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup
In **3**, *No Preference* ➡ ●
Adding Reception Areas
📺 ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ● ➡ Select Area ➡ ✉ ➡ *Set Area Info* ➡ ● ➡ From **3**

Digital TV Antenna

Pull Antenna by top bead until it clicks.
● After extending Antenna fully, fold then rotate it to find best reception. (Unless transmission source is near, extend it for better reception.)
● After use, gently retract Antenna aligning top bead. Do not carry handset with Antenna extended; damage may result.

7
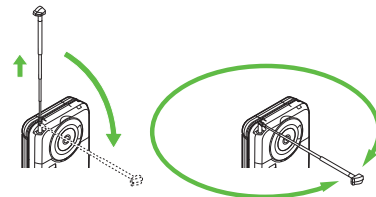
Digital TV

Advanced

👆 ●Switching reception Areas ●Renaming Areas ●Changing/disabling ⊡ function ●Editing channels ●Deleting all channels in Area ●Adding new channels to Area ●Updating all channels in the Area (**P.7-12**)

7-3

Watching TV

1 📺
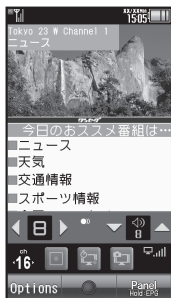
TV Window

2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**
- Use ⊙ to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3 ☎ ➔ *Yes* ➔ ● ➔ TV ends

Incoming Calls
- Press ☎ to answer calls with clamshell open.

When Answering Voice Calls with Memory Card Inserted (Time Shift)
- Current program is temporarily recorded; start playback after the call.

Incoming Messages
- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press ✉ to access messages.

Watching TV in Widescreen

Viewer Position

1 **In TV window, rotate Display to Viewer position**

2 **Hold handset in landscape**

- TV window rotates with handset orientation.

3 **Drag finger left or right on TV image ➔ Tap channel**
- Alternatively, tap channel key then drag finger left or right to select channels.

Activating TV from Standby in Viewer Position
  Tap *MENU* ➔ Tap *TV* ➔ Tap *Digital TV*

Advanced

📖 ●Opening Help ●Searching for current program on the Internet ●Enlarging display size for portrait orientation ●Enlarging image portion in landscape (And more on **P.7-12**)
●Changing subtitle settings ●Changing sound settings (**P.7-15**)

Clamshell Open

First, in Motion Control menu, set Display Change to *Manual at Open(press)* or *Manual(press)*.

1 **In TV window,**

- TV window rotates 90 degrees clockwise.

2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**

- Multi Selector response changes with TV orientation.

Major TV Window Operations

Handset Keys

Toggle Panel On/Off (portrait) **Show/Hide Channel Area (landscape)**	
Change Area	
Volume Control	
Toggle Display Size (portrait)	

Touch Panel

Switch Channel	Drag finger left or right on TV image ➡ Tap channel
Volume Control	Drag finger up or down on TV image
Toggle View	Tap TV image
Change Display Size	Pinch or spread fingers on TV image[1]
Change Data Broadcast View	Pinch or spread fingers on Data Broadcast area[1]
Change Area	Tap Area name ➡ Tap Area[2]

[1] Available in portrait orientation.
[2] Available in landscape orientation.

Using Options Menu via Touch Panel

- Tap *Options*, then tap menu items to proceed.

Panel & Channel Area Descriptions
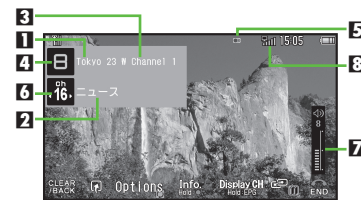
1	Area name	**5**	Sound Channel
2	Program name	**6**	Channel
3	Station name	**7**	Volume
4	Channel key	**8**	Signal strength[*]

[*]The more bars the better.
Indicator position varies with display size.

Advanced

📖 ●Saving current channel ●Selecting an audiovisual mode ●Adjusting current AV Mode parameters ●Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions ●Switching audio output to wireless device (And more on **P.7-12** - **7-13**)

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait orientation, Data Broadcast text appears below TV image. Use 🔘 to select an item and press ● to access program-related information and interactive services.
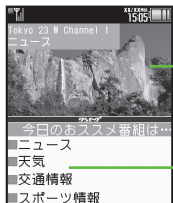
TV Image

Data Broadcast

Data Broadcast Window

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

Still Image Capture

Capture screenshots while watching TV.
- May be unavailable if TV was activated by TV Timer, etc.
- Saved images cannot be forwarded, edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to messages.

1 In TV window, 📷

2 ●
- Image is saved.

In Viewer Position
Tap *Options* ➔ Tap *Useful* ➔ Tap *Capture* ➔ Tap *Assign*
■ In portrait orientation, tap 📷.

Opening Saved Images
- **While Watching TV**
  [TV Window] ⊠ ➔ *Useful Func.* ➔ ● ➔ *TV-Image Folder* ➔ ● ➔ Select image ➔ ●
- **From Standby**
  ● ➔ *TV* ➔ ● ➔ *TV-Image Folder* ➔ ● ➔ Select image ➔ ●

7

Digital TV

Advanced

🔖 ●Changing view ●Returning to initial window ●Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts ●Hiding Network connection confirmation ●Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information (And more on **P.7-14**)

7-6

Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

TV Listing	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
Program Info	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 **In TV window, ⊙ (Long)**
● EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
● When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

In Viewer Position
Long Touch *Hold:EPG*

Program Info

1 **In TV window, ⊠ ➔ *OperateProgram* ➔ ⦿**

2 ***Program Info.* ➔ ⦿**

XX:XX - XX:XX ニュース		
XX:XX - XX:XX 天気		
XX:XX - XX:XX 交通情報		
XX:XX - XX:XX スポーツ情報		
XX:XX - XX:XX 今日のエンタメ		
XX:XX - XX:XX ミュージック		
XX:XX - XX:XX ドラマ		
Options	View	Record

Program Info Window

3 **Select program ➔ ⦿**
● To return to TV window, press ⟲ twice.

Setting Recording Timer via Program Info
[Program Info Window] Select program ➔ ⊙
● Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Setting TV Timer via Program Info
[Program Info Window] Select program ➔ ⊠ ➔ *Watching* ➔ ⦿

7 Digital TV

7-7

Recording Programs

Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).

Precautions
- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 940SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

Dubbing 10
- 940SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recordings to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties to check the remaining number of copies allowed to be made.

❶ In TV window, 🔲 (Long) ➔ Recording starts

Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.
- When Illumination Light (center LED) flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: center LED lights green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.

❷ 🔲 (Long) ➔ Recording ends

Recording Programs in Landscape
[TV Window] ● (Long)
- To stop, Long Press ● while recording.

In Viewer Position
- Tap 🔲 to start recording. To stop, tap 🔲.
  - In landscape orientation, Long Touch *Hold:*●.

Chase Play (Playing while Recording)
- Watch a program from the beginning while recording it on Memory Card.
  [Recording Window] 🔘 (Long) ➔
  Playback starts ➔ ☺ (Long) ➔
  Playback stops
  - To start playback in Viewer position, tap *Options* ➔ *Rec/🕐* ➔ 🕐 *Play*. Long Touch *Hold:*■ to stop playback.

Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted
- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Saving Files via the Internet while Recording
- While recording programs to handset, confirm there is enough free memory before saving files.

Advanced
🖱 ●Recording programs without Data Broadcasts ●Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card ●Recording programs to handset (**P.7-15**)

Playing Recorded Programs

1 In TV window, ☒ ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ●

Video List

● 🏁 indicates the file is unplayable.

2 Select file ➡ ●

Playback Window

● Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

3 ☺ (Long) ➡ Playback stops

Switching Video List
After **1**, ☒ ➡ *Change to Phone* or *Change to MemoryCard* ➡ ●

Major Playback Operations

Adjust volume or change display size following the same operations used while watching TV.

Handset Keys

Rewind/Fast Forward	◎¹, ² / ◎¹
Skip (Forward/ Backward)	🔅 / 🔆
Pause³	☺ (● in landscape)
Marker	🔔⁴
Toggle Panel On/Off	🖲 (portrait)
Show/Hide Channel Area	☺ (landscape)

¹Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press ☺ (● in landscape).
²Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)
³In pause, use ◎ to reverse/advance frame.
⁴Not available during Time Shift playback. Long Press to split file.

Touch Panel

Rewind	Drag finger left on TV image¹
Fast Forward	Drag finger right on TV image¹
Pause	Tap *Pause* or ▐▐²
Stop Playback	Long Touch *Hold:*▉
Skip to Any Point	Drag slider
Toggle View	Tap TV image
Change Display Size	Pinch or spread fingers on TV image³
Change Data Broadcast View	Pinch or spread fingers on Data Broadcast area³

¹Release to resume normal playback.
²In pause, drag finger left/right on TV image to reverse/advance frame.
³Available in portrait orientation.

7 Digital TV

Advanced

🔖 ●Splitting files by specifying a time point ●Playing files repeatedly ●Playing split files ●Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders ●Checking memory status ●Renaming files ●Deleting files ●Copying files to Memory Card ●Opening file properties ●Playing files with Markers (And more on **P.7-15** - **7-16**)

7-9

TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

1. **In TV window, ☺ ➡ *Rec./ TimeShift* ➡ ●**

2. ***Reservation List* ➡ ● ➡ ☺**

3. ***New Entry* ➡ ●**

```
        New Entry
From TV Listing
Manual              》
```

4. ***Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Watching* or *Recording* ➡ ●**

```
20XX  XX  XX
20XX / XX / XX
20XX  XX  XX

14   04
15 : 05
16   06
```
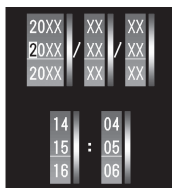
5. **Enter start date/time ➡ ●
➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●**

6. ***Channel:* ➡ ● ➡ Select channel ➡ ● ➡ ☜**

Setting Timer via EPG
In ④, *From TV Listing* ➡ ●
- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception.
- End the current operations.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory.

At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.

```
Reservation time
for watching TV
will come soon.
```

Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function
- TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV may remain off, or the current function may end automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

7

Digital TV

Advanced

♣ ○Opening/editing/deleting Timer details ○Opening/deleting Timer log ○Customizing TV Alarm settings ○Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/ TV Recording Timer (**P.7-17**)

7-10

Time Shift Recording & Playback

Record current program temporarily for delayed playback.

● Recorded content is deleted after playback.
● First, insert Memory Card.

1 **While watching TV, 🖲 (Long) ➔ Recording starts**

今日のおススメ番組は…
Recording in progress

2 **While recording, 🖲 (Long) ➔ Playback starts**
● Playback starts from where recording was started.
● Recording and playback stop when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.

Recording in Viewer Position
Tap *Options* ➔ Tap *Rec/⏱* ➔ ⏱ *Rec*
■ To start playback while recording, tap *Options* ➔ *Rec/⏱* ➔ ⏱ *Start*.
■ In portrait orientation, tap 📷.

Major Playback Operations

Handset Keys

Fast Forward	⊙*
Skip Forward	#🔒
Skip Backward	✳🔒

*Press 🖲 to resume normal Time Shift playback.

Touch Panel

Fast Forward	Drag finger right on TV image*

*Release to resume normal Time Shift playback.

Time Shift Recording Automatic Activation

When a Voice Call is answered while watching TV with Memory Card inserted, Time Shift recording starts automatically; Long Press 🖲 after the call for playback.

7

Digital TV

Advanced

🖑 ●Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation (**P.7-15**)

Area & Channel

Switching reception Areas	While watching TV, ⓑ ➡ Select Area ➡ ⦿
Renaming Areas	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select Area ➡ ⓒ ➡ *Change Area Name* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter name ➡ ⦿
Changing/disabling ⊙ function	**Start Here** While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Channel Key Setting* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below
	Toggling All Receivable Channels *By Manual* ➡ ⦿
	Disabling *Disable* ➡ ⦿
Editing channels	**Start Here** While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *CH Switch* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select channel ➡ ⓒ ➡ See below
	Switching Channel Positions *Flip* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select target key ➡ ⦿
	Deleting Channels *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Deleting all channels in Area	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select Area ➡ ⓒ ➡ *Reset Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select Area ➡ ⓒ ➡ *Channel Update* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Update Further* ➡ ⦿
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Change Area* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select Area ➡ ⓒ ➡ *Channel Update* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Update All* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿

Watching

Opening Help	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Help* ➡ ⦿ ● Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching for current program on the Internet	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *OperateProgram* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Program Info. Search* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Search* ➡ ⦿ ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Enlarging display size for portrait orientation	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Screen Size* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Enlarge* ➡ ⦿
Enlarging image portion in landscape	With TV in landscape, Long Touch portion ● Drag enlarged portion to enlarge other areas.
Canceling image smoothing	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Smooth Mode* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Saving current channel	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Save Channel* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select key ➡ ⦿ ● To overwrite a saved channel, choose *Yes* and press ⦿.
Selecting an audiovisual mode	While watching TV, ⓒ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *AV Mode* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select mode ➡ ⦿ ● TV reception time may shorten depending on the mode.

7

Digital TV

Adjusting current AV Mode parameters	**Start Here** **While watching TV,** ⊚ ➡ *AV Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **See below** ● Change AV Mode (select mode other than *Link to Genre*) first.
	Brightness *Image* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Brightness* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Adjust level** ➡ ⬤
	Disabling/Enabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor *Image* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Brightness* ➡ ⬤ ➡ ⊚ (☐/☑) ➡ ⬤
	Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene *Image* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Control by Scene* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *On(Light)* or *On* ➡ ⬤
	Other Image-Related Parameters *Image* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select item** ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Adjust level** ➡ ⬤ ● Adjust *Contrast*, *Blackness* (black level), *Color* (color density), *Tint* (skin color tone) and *Sharpness*.
	Restoring Default Image Settings *Image* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Reset* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⬤
	Selecting Sound Option *Tone* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select option** ➡ ⬤
Changing panel pattern in portrait orientation	**With TV in portrait,** ⊚ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Panel Type* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select pattern** ➡ ⬤
Setting indicators to always appear in landscape orientation	**With TV in landscape,** ⊚ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Display Icon* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *On* ➡ ⬤

Switching One Seg service	**While watching TV,** ⊚ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Select Serv. Station* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select service** ➡ ⬤ ● Available for programs with multiple services.
Listening to audio from Speaker	**While watching TV,** ⊚ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Sound Output* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Loudspeaker* ➡ ⬤
Using wireless Headphones	**While watching TV,** 🎜 **(Long)** ● Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	**While watching TV,** ⊚ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Auto Exit* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Auto Exit Time* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **Select time** ➡ ⬤
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	**While watching TV,** ⊚ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Auto Exit* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Close Action* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Watch TV* ➡ ⬤
Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions	**Start Here** ⬤ ➡ *TV* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ⬤ ➡ **See below**
	Showing Alarm Notice *Alarm* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Alarm Notice* ➡ ⬤
	Showing Voice Calls, etc. **Select item** ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Notice a Call* ➡ ⬤
	Showing New Message Window *Incoming Message* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ⬤
Switching audio output to wireless device	⬤ ➡ *TV* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⬤ ➡ 🕭*Sound Output* ➡ ⬤ ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ⬤

7

Digital TV

7

Digital TV

Data Broadcast

Changing view	**With Data Broadcast in portrait, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ● ➡ *Change View (Data)* ➡ ●** ● To return to TV window, press �free.
Returning to initial window	**With Data Broadcast in portrait, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ● ➡ *Back to Top* ➡ ●**
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	Start Here **While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete StationData* ➡ ● ➡ See below** **Deleting by Station** **Select station ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●** **Deleting All** **⊠ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●**
Hiding Network connection confirmation	**While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ● ➡ *Notify Connection* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●**
Sending/hiding Location Information	Start Here **While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ● ➡ *Location* ➡ ● ➡ See below** **Sending Always** ***On* ➡ ●** **Hiding Always** ***Off* ➡ ●**
Hiding manufacture number and other information	**While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ● ➡ *Manufacture Number* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●**

TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	**While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source ➡ ●** ● Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	Start Here ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Link* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Opening TV Links** **Select link ➡ ●** ● Connection fees may apply. **Opening Properties** **Select link ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●**
Deleting TV links	Start Here ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Link* ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Entry** **Select link ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●** **All Entries** **⊠ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●**

Subtitle & Sound

Changing subtitle settings	**Start Here** While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *Subtitle/Sound* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below
	● May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, etc.).
	Showing Subtitles Always *Display Subtitle* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *On* ➡ ⦿
	Hiding Subtitles Always *Display Subtitle* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
	Changing Subtitle Language *Subtitle Language* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Language 2* ➡ ⦿
	Showing Subtitle Area Always *Auto Subtitle Off* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
	Showing Subtitles at the Top *Subtitle Position* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Upper* ➡ ⦿
	Increasing Subtitle Lines *Subtitle ScrollMode* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *On* ➡ ⦿
Changing sound settings	**Start Here** While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *Subtitle/Sound* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below
	Selecting Sound Option *Sound Type* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Sound2* ➡ ⦿
	● Available when multiple sounds are supported.
	Listening to Sub Language *Sound Channel* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Sub* ➡ ⦿
	Listening to Main & Sub Languages *Sound Channel* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Main + Sub* ➡ ⦿

Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Set Recording* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Image Only* ➡ ⦿
Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card	While watching TV, ⊠ ➡ *SetBroadcastData* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Image Location* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ⦿
Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation	⦿ ➡ *TV* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Set Call Time Shift* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Recording programs to handset	⦿ ➡ *TV* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Save Recording to* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Phone Memory* ➡ ⦿

Recorded Programs

■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback, ⊠ ➡ *Split File* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Select Point* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊙ Specify point ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Confirm* ➡ ⦿
Playing files repeatedly	⦿ ➡ *TV* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Playback Pattern* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Repeat* ➡ ⦿
Playing split files	⦿ ➡ *TV* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select split file ➡ ⓨ ➡ Select file ➡ ⦿

7

Digital TV

Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Recorder Contents* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ● ● During playback, press 8 to switch sound channels [L (Main), R (Sub) or L + R (Main + Sub)]. (Available for programs supporting sub language.) For more operations, see **P.9-6** "Video Playback Operations." ● In Recorder Contents file list, press ◎ to rename files, change playback mode (repeat, random, etc.), check memory status, open properties or delete files.

■ Managing

Checking memory status	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ➡ *Memory Remaining* ➡ ●
Renaming files	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ◎ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ●
Deleting files	**Start Here** ● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Single Files** **Select file** ➡ ◎ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Files** ◎ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Copying files to Memory Card	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ➡ *Change to Phone* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ◎ ➡ *Copy to Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● File is moved from handset to Memory Card when the number of copies made exceeds the limit.

Moving files to Memory Card	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ➡ *Change to Phone* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ◎ ➡ *Move to Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Files moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset.
Opening file properties	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Player* ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ◎ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Markers

Playing files with Markers	**Start Here** **During playback** ➡ **See below** **Skipping between Markers** ◌ (Long) or ◌ (Long) **Moving to Specific Markers** 0 - 9
Using Marker List	**Start Here** **During playback,** ◎ ➡ *Set Marker* ➡ ● ➡ *Marker List* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Starting Playback** **Select number** ➡ ● **Deleting a Marker** **Select number** ➡ ◎ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● **Deleting All Markers** ◎ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

7

Digital TV

TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

Opening/editing/ deleting Timer details	**Start Here** While watching TV, ☺ ➡ *Rec./TimeShift* ➡ ● ➡ *Reservation List* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Opening Entries Select entry ➡ ●
	Editing Entries Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ⊙ ● Some entries may not be edited depending on the content.
	Deleting Entries Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Opening/deleting Timer log	**Start Here** While watching TV, ☺ ➡ *Rec./TimeShift* ➡ ● ➡ *Reservation List* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ➡ See below
	Opening Timer Log Select record ➡ ●
	Playing Recorded Programs Select record ➡ ☺
	Deleting Records Select record ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Customizing TV Alarm settings	**Start Here** While watching TV, ☺ ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Changing TV Alarm Time *Alarm Time* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
	Disabling Tone/Vibration *Tone* or *Vibration* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
	Disabling Illumination *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
	Changing Duration *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer	● ➡ *TV* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *TV Reserve Prior* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

7

Digital TV

7

Digital TV

Watching

⑦ TV won't activate

● Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

⑦ Cannot watch TV

● Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
● Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
● TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

⑦ Area setup does not complete correctly

● Perform *Update All* in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

⑦ Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

● When a Chaku-Uta® file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

⑦ *Could not start recording.* appeared as recording result

● Recording failed due to low battery/ memory, active function, etc.

⑦ *Recording aborted.* appeared as recording result

● Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.

8

Camera & Imaging

Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Detect Personal

Register faces; related information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection.

Continuous AF

Focus continuously adjusts as the framed subject's position changes.

Tailored Cameras

940SH is preloaded with cameras tailored for various purposes/occasions; select a specific camera for a particular subject/environment.

Album

Sort saved images into up to 500 albums; create original albums as needed.

Important Mobile Camera Usage Notes
- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with soft dry cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.

Auto Shut-off
- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

8

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

🔮 ●Changing function assigned to Camera Key (⬛) ●Opening Help (**P.8-28**)

Photo Camera & Video Camera Overview

Focus modes and sizes shown below are defaults; those with * are fixed.

		Description	Focus Mode	Size
Standard Shooting	**Easy Auto Camera**	Capture nearby subjects easily (settings partially changeable)	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Pro Auto Camera	Capture nearby subjects easily (settings mostly changeable)	Normal(Portrait)	12M
	Quick Camera	Capture distant scenery quickly	Manual Focus*	3M
Subject Type & Environment	**Scene Cameras**	Select one according to subject/environment	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Monochrome Camera	Capture black and white images	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Sepia Camera	Capture sepia images	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Long Exposure Camera	Capture images in low light (fireworks, night scenes, etc.)	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
Specific Objectives	**Wallpaper Camera**	Show mock Clock/Calendar in Viewfinder to capture image and set it as Wallpaper	Normal(Portrait)	Wallpaper*
	Auction Camera	Capture up to three images in a session	Center Auto Focus	VGA
	Messaging Camera	Capture and send images via mail easily	Normal(Portrait)*	VGA
	Blog Camera	Capture and post images to blogs easily	Normal(Portrait)	VGA

		Description	Focus Mode	Size
Auto Shutter Release	Look Back Camera	Play attention-getting sound and release shutter automatically when subject turns face to camera	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Smile Camera	Release shutter automatically when subject smiles	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Self Timer Camera	Release shutter automatically after selected time elapses	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
Special Shooting	Rapid Shooting Camera	Capture up to 100 images consecutively	Center Auto Focus	QVGA
	Three-Shot Camera	Capture three consecutive images of up to 12M size automatically	Normal(Portrait)	VGA
	Panorama Camera	Capture panoramic images of scenery, etc.	Center Auto Focus	—
	Scanner Camera	Move handset to scan the area to capture	Center Auto Focus	Free
Additional Cameras	Drawable Camera	Drag finger on captured image to scribble or sketch	Normal(Portrait)*	Wallpaper
	Pretty Arrange Camera	Touch up faces in captured images	Normal(Portrait)*	5M
	Self Portrait Camera	Use guide to capture self portraits	Normal(Portrait)*	5M
	Face Register Camera	Register name and note for faces	Normal(Portrait)*	VGA*
Video Camera	Fine Video Camera	Record long high quality video	Auto Focus	Wide
	Video Camera for Mail	Record short video easily to send it via mail	Auto Focus	QCIF

Capturing Still Images

Viewer Position

Follow these steps to capture someone's image using *Pro Auto Camera*:
(Descriptions are for operation with Touch Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

1 Rotate Display to Viewer position
● When rotating Display to Viewer position for the first time, Viewer Position menu opens; tap *Take Picture* to complete setup.

2 Tap ▦ ➡ Swipe finger to select *Pro Auto Cam*

Customize it as desired for those who with own tastes.

3 Tap Pro Auto Camera
● Pro Auto Camera activates.

4 Frame subject on Display

Photo Viewfinder (face detected)

● Focus is locked on faces automatically for Pro Auto Camera, Easy Auto Camera, etc. (Portrait auto focus)
● When multiple faces are detected, frame appears on each face; tap one on which to lock focus.
● Register name, note, etc. for faces; entered information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection, and captured images are sorted into albums (Person) when saved. (Detect Personal)

5 ▬

Captured Image Window

● Shutter clicks; captured image appears.

6 Tap ▤
● Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
● Open saved images via Album, Review or Data Folder.

7 Tap *END* ➡ Camera shuts down

Mobile Light
● Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level or camera type. Follow these steps to turn setting off:
  [Photo Viewfinder] Tap 🔦 **➡ Tap** 🔦 **twice**
● Tap *MENU* first for some cameras.

Advanced

✍ ●Selecting Self-timer time/repeat interval ●Changing image size ●Changing focus frame design ●Changing shutter click sound ●Changing save location ●Changing Mobile Light mode (And more on **P.8-28** - **8-29**)

Pre-Image Capture Operations (Touch Panel)

Indicators appear on Display. Tap one to adjust the corresponding setting or execute the assigned command. Indicators vary by camera type.
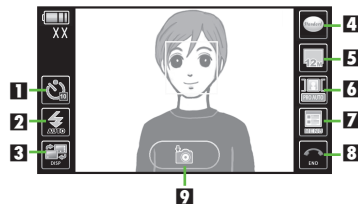
1	Self-timer	6	Switch cameras
2	Mobile Light	7	MENU
3	Toggle indicator view	8	Exit
4	Scene	9	Release shutter
5	Picture Size		

Toggling Indicator View
   [Photo Viewfinder] Tap *DISP*
Opening Status Icon List
● When indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear at Display top, tap indicator area to check active indicators and their descriptions.

■ **Additional Operations**
Shortcuts:

Zoom In/Out	Drag finger up or down on image
Adjust Brightness	Drag finger left or right on image
Focus Lock	Tap image

Tap *MENU* for more functions/settings.

Opening Help
   [Photo Viewfinder] Tap *MENU* ➡ Tap *Help* twice

Clamshell Open

Follow these steps to capture distant scenery using *Quick Camera*:
(Descriptions are for operation with handset keys, with Display in portrait orientation.)

1. $\boxed{\textbf{ロ}\triangleright}$
   ● Photo Viewfinder appears.

2. $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0.2ex}{✉}}$ ➡ *Switch Camera* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Quick Cam* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

3. **Frame subject on Display**
   ● Faces are not detected automatically for Quick Camera. For close-up portrait shots, press $\boxed{\text{☆}}$ and use $\textcircled{\scriptsize ?}$ to adjust focus. (Manual Focus)

4. $\textcircled{\bullet}$
   ● Shutter clicks; captured image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
   ● Open saved images via Album, Review or Data Folder.

5. $\boxed{\text{☎}}$ ➡ **Camera shuts down**

Mobile Light
● Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level or camera type. Follow these steps to turn setting off:
   [Photo Viewfinder] $\textcircled{\scriptsize\raisebox{0.2ex}{✉}}$ ➡ *Mobile Light* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Off* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

8 Camera & Imaging

Advanced

⚙ ●Correcting portrait auto focus images (And more on **P.8-30**)

Pre-Image Capture Operations (Handset Keys)

Zoom In/Out	ⓒ/ⓠ
Adjust Brightness	ⓢ/ⓢ
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	#
Toggle Indicator View	☞
Open Help	0

Press ⓝ to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

Focus Lock

Lock focus on subject; camera continuously focuses on the subject even if it moves. Chase Focus tracks the subject's movement, and Continuous AF adjusts focus as the distance to the subject changes.

1 **In Photo Viewfinder, frame subject in center of Display**

2 **Half press ■ or tap subject**

● Focus Lock is set.

3 ■

● Captured image appears.
● Tap *OK* to return to Viewfinder.

Using Handset Keys
[Photo Viewfinder] Frame subject in center of Display ➡ 🔲 ➡ ⓞ
Canceling Focus Lock
● Release ■ or press 🔲.
Chase Focus
● Camera distinguishes the subject by color; light-colored subjects or subjects having the same color as the background may not be tracked correctly.

Image Size & Print/Display Size

940SH Picture Size & Corresponding Print/Display Size:

12M	A3 prints
8M	A4 prints
5M	B5 prints
3M	L to 2L prints
Full HD	Full HD display wallpaper*
Wallpaper	940SH Wallpaper
VGA	VGA display wallpaper*
QVGA	QVGA display wallpaper*

*For image specifications, see **P.17-20** "Photo Camera."

Auto Resize Zoom
● At *12M*, Picture Size changes with zoom scale (print quality may be affected); check the size on indicator before image capture.

8

Camera & Imaging

8-7

Using Various Cameras

Activating Cameras

(Descriptions are for operation with Touch Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

In Photo Viewfinder, tap 📷

Swipe finger to select camera
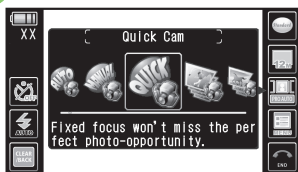
Tap camera

- Selected camera activates.
- For subsequent operations, see "Using Tailored Cameras" below.

Using Tailored Cameras

(Descriptions are for operation with Touch Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

■ **Rapid Shooting Camera**

Tap 📷

Tap mode twice

Frame subject on Display ➔ ▭
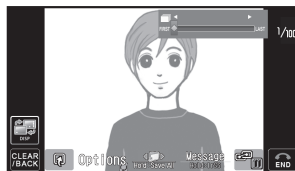
- After image capture, the first preview image appears.

Long Touch *Hold:Save All*

- All captured images are saved.
- Save process may take some time depending on the number of captured images.

Saving Selected Images
After ③, drag image left or right to select one ➔ Tap 📷
Creating Strobe Photo (Composite Image)
After ③, tap 🔲 ➔ Tap *Yes* ➔ Tap *OK*
- Tap 📷 to save.
- May be unavailable depending on the number of captured images.

■ **Look Back Camera**

Frame subject on Display ➔ Tap 👤 or 👤

- Attention-getting sound plays.

Shutter is released upon face detection; image is saved

Tap *OK*

- Viewfinder returns.

Advanced

●Changing continuous shooting mode ●Changing Look Back Camera sound (**P.8-29**)

■ Smile Camera

❶**Frame subject on Display**

❷**Shutter is released upon smile detection; image is saved**

❸**Tap *OK***
 ● Viewfinder returns.

■ Self Timer Camera

❶**Frame subject on Display ➡ ▭**
 ● Countdown starts.

❷**Shutter is released after approximately ten seconds; image is saved**

❸**Tap *OK***
 ● Viewfinder returns.

■ Wallpaper Camera

❶**Frame subject on Display ➡ ▭**

 ● Wallpaper preview appears.
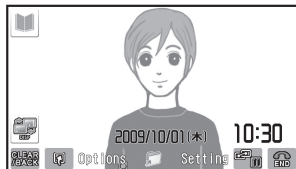
❷**Tap *Setting***
 ● Image is set as Wallpaper. (Viewfinder returns.)

■ Auction Camera

❶**Frame subject on Display ➡ ▭**
 ● First preview image appears.

❷**Tap 🗂**
 ● Repeat ❶ - ❷ to capture two more images following onscreen instructions.

❸**Tap *Yes***

■ Messaging Camera

❶**Frame subject on Display ➡ ▭**

❷**Tap 📩**
 ● Mail Composition window opens. Complete and send message.

8

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

👆 ●Selecting Self-timer time/repeat interval (**P.8-28**)
 ●Adjusting smile detection level ●Changing Clock/Calendar type for Wallpaper Camera (**P.8-29**)

■ **Pretty Arrange Camera**

1 **Frame subject on Display**
➜ ■

2 **Tap** 🖼️
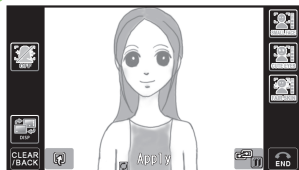
● Face is touched up.

3 **Tap** *Apply* ➜ **Tap** 📁
● Viewfinder returns.

Adjusting Each Effect Separately
After 2, tap corresponding indicator (🖼️, etc.)
■ Tap the same indicator repeatedly for further adjustment.

Editing Images
After 1, tap 📷 ➜ Tap effect
■ For more, see **P.8-22** "Picture Editor."

■ **Panorama Camera**

1 **Frame subject on Display**
➜ ■
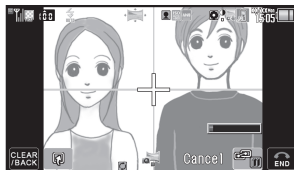
2 **Move handset slowly to keep ✛ aligned with either of yellow lines**

3 ■
● Captured image is saved.
● Image is captured automatically when the bar ( ) turns blue.

■ **Self Portrait Camera**
Open handset and rotate Display 180 degrees. (Self Portrait position)

1 **Rotate Display to Self Portrait position**

2 **Turn handset upside down**

3 **Frame your face on Display ➜ Face is detected**

4 **Shutter is released after approximately two seconds; image is saved**

5 ⦿
● Viewfinder returns.

■ **Additional Cameras**

Three-Shot Camera	Frame subject on Display ➜ ■ ➜ Long Touch *Hold:Save All* ● For more, see **P.8-8** "Rapid Shooting Camera." (Creating strobe photo is not available for Three-Shot Camera.)
Scene Cameras	
Monochrome Camera	Frame subject on Display ➜ ■
Sepia Camera	
Long Exposure Camera	Frame subject on Display ➜ ■ ● Shutter is left open for approximately 30 seconds before image capture.
Blog Camera	Frame subject on Display ➜ ■ ➜ Tap 📷 ➜ Proceed with blogging
Drawable Camera	Frame subject on Display ➜ ■ ➜ Tap 🖼️ ➜ Drag finger on image ➜ Tap *Assign*
Scanner Camera	Frame subject on Display ➜ ■ ➜ Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture ➜ ■

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing panorama settings ●Previewing panorama image ●Changing panorama image preview method ●Changing exposure time for Long Exposure Camera (**P.8-30**)

Changing & Saving Camera Settings

Change settings according to purpose/environment; save frequently used settings as *My Camera* for future use.

● Some settings may be unavailable depending on camera type (no corresponding indicators appear).

● For setting procedures, see **P.8-28** - **8-29**. In addition to these, there are settings unique to each tailored camera.

Major Items

		Description
Focus	**Focus Mode**	Select from *Normal(Portrait)*, *Center Auto Focus*, *Low Light* and *Manual Focus*
	Continuous AF	Select whether to adjust focus continuously as focus-locked subject's position changes
	Chase Focus	Select whether to track focus-locked subject automatically as it moves within framed image
	Focus Mark	Select focus frame design from *pattern 1* to *pattern 6*
Shutter	**Self-timer**	Select *10 sec.*, *5 sec.*, *2 sec.* or *Off*
	Shutter Mode	Select from *Normal* (manual), *Egao* (smile detection) and *Furimuki* (face detection)
	Shutter Sound	Select shutter click sound from *pattern 1* to *pattern 3*
Image Size & Quality	**Picture Size**	Select image size from *12M(3000x4000)* to *QVGA(240x320)*
	Picture Quality	Select image quality from *High Quality*, *Fine* and *Normal*

		Description
Environment	**ISO Sensitivity**	Select light sensitivity from *Auto(～ 800)* to *Auto(High: ～ 12800)* and *100* to *12800*
	White Balance	Select *Auto*, *Daylight*, *Cloud/Shade*, *Tungsten* or *Fluorescent* according to lighting conditions
	Exposure	Select amount of light received by camera from *-2* to *+2*
	Mobile Light	Select Mobile Light mode from *On*, *Automatic*, *Low Light* and *Off*
Save Settings	**Save Pictures to**	Select *Phone Memory*, *Memory Card*, *DCIM* or *Ask Each Time*
	Auto Save	Select *ON(Preview Off)*, *On(Preview 2 sec.)*, *On(Preview Manual)* or *Off*
	Background Save	Select whether to enable quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images
Other	**Shake Reducing**	Select shake reduction option from *Auto*, *Auto(Strong)* and *off*
	Display Setting	Select indicator view from *Icon On*, *Icon Off* and *Guidance*
	Set Send Key	Select send option assigned to ⓨ

Changing Settings

Example: Picture Quality
(Descriptions are for operation with Touch Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap *MENU*
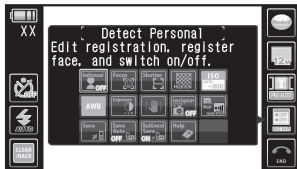
2 Tap *Picture Quality* twice
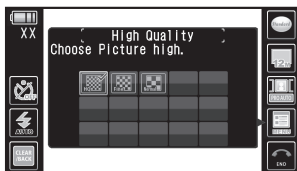
3 Tap quality twice
● Viewfinder returns.
● For some settings, current status appears in their indicators.

Saving Changed Settings

After image capture, save changed settings with a name and captured image; load saved settings in the same manner as switching cameras.
(Descriptions are for operation with Touch Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

Saving as My Camera

1 In captured image window, tap *Options* ➡ Tap *My Camera Entry*
● Messages appear.

2 Drag frame to specify image area
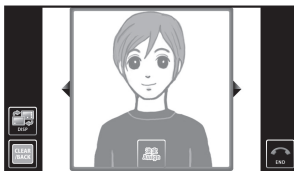
● The specified portion will be used as the camera's icon.

3 Tap *Assign*
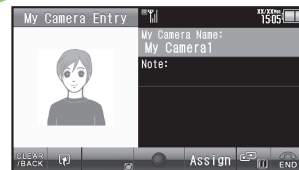
4 Tap *My Camera Name:*

5 Enter name ➡ Tap *Done*

6 Tap *Assign*
● My Camera is created.

Entering Information
After **5**, tap *Note:* ➡ Enter text ➡ Tap *Done* ➡ **6**

Using My Cameras

1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap camera selection indicator (, etc.)

2 Swipe finger to select My Camera

3 Tap My Camera

8
Camera & Imaging

Advanced

🔧 ●Deleting My Cameras ●Editing My Cameras (**P.8-30**)

8-13

Registering Faces (Detect Personal)

Register faces; related information
appears in Viewfinder upon face
detection, and captured images are
sorted into albums (Person) when saved.

● Register name, note and priority for up to
ten faces.
● When multiple registered faces are detected,
focus is locked to one with highest priority.

Natsuyama Sora
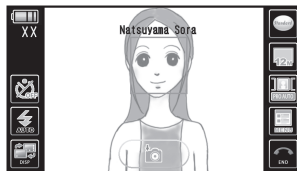
Information in Viewfinder

Saving Entries

(Descriptions are for operation with Touch
Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

1. **In Photo Viewfinder, tap** *MENU*

2. **Tap** *Detect Personal*

3. **Tap** *Register Face*

Face in Guide
frame when in
frame red, take a
picture.

OK
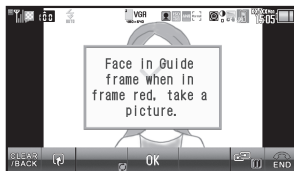
4. **Use guide to find best position**
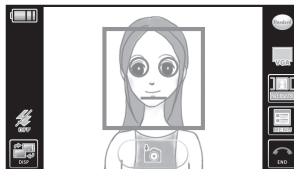
● Guide turns red when face is detected.

5. ▬

Register Face

1 Empty
2 Empty
3 Empty
4 Empty

● Window shown above opens when
face is recognized correctly; if not,
repeat **4** - **5**.

6. **Tap** *Empty*

7. **Tap** *Name:*

8. **Enter name** ➡ **Tap** *Done*

9 Tap *Assign*

- Entry is saved.
- The lower the entry number the higher the priority.

Entering Information
After ❸, tap *Note:* ➡ Enter text ➡ Tap *Done* ➡ **9**
Setting Text Color
After ❸, tap *Font Color:* ➡ Tap color ➡ **9**

■ Upon face detection, information in Viewfinder appears in the selected color.

Editing Entries

1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap *MENU*

2 Tap *Detect Personal* ➡ Tap *Edit Face* twice

Edit Face Window

3 Select entry ➡ Tap *Edit*
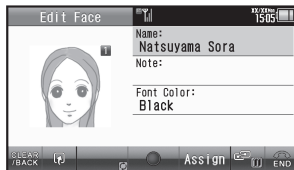
4 Tap item ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving entries

---

5 Tap *Assign*
- Entry is overwritten.

Deleting/Moving Entries

Follow these steps to delete an entry:

1 In Edit Face window, select entry

2 Tap *Options*

3 Tap *Delete* ➡ Tap *Yes*
- Entry is deleted.

Moving Entries (Changing Priorities)
After ❷, tap *Change Priority* ➡ Tap target location

8

Camera & Imaging

Recording Video

Viewer Position

Follow these steps to record long video using *Fine Video Camera*:

(Descriptions are for operation with Touch Panel, with Display in landscape orientation.)

1. **Tap *MENU* ➡ Tap *Camera***

2. **Tap *Fine Video Camera***

Video Viewfinder
(Fine Video Camera)

3. **Frame subject on Display ➡ ▭**
   - Recording starts after a tone.
   - If Memory Card is not inserted, storage media options appears.

4. **▭**
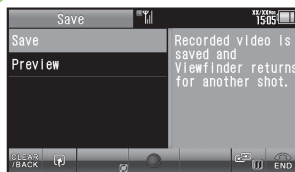
5. **Tap *Save***
   - Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
   - Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.

Playing Unsaved Video
   In 5, tap *Preview*

Incoming Calls
- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

If Battery Runs Low
   Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Switching Video Cameras
   [Video Viewfinder] Tap *Options* ➡ Tap *Simple Setting* ➡ Tap video camera

Operations in Video Viewfinder (Touch Panel)

Indicators appear on Display. Tap one to adjust the corresponding setting or execute the assigned command.

1	Start recording	**4**	Mobile Light
2	Zoom in/out	**5**	Exit
3	Adjust brightness	**6**	Switch cameras

Opening Status Icon List
- Tap indicator area (Display top) to check active indicators and their descriptions.

Advanced

Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots *Changing image quality* *Activating Mobile Light* *Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)* *Changing recording time/size* (And more on **P.8-30** - **8-31**)

■ **Additional Operations**

Zoom In/Out	Tap *Zoom* ➜ Drag slider
Adjust Brightness	Tap *Exposure* ➜ Drag slider
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	Tap *Light*
Focus Lock	Tap image
Pause/Resume Recording	Tap *Pause* or *Restart*[*]
Capture Still Images	Tap *Capture Image*
Cancel Recording (Start Over)	Tap *CLEAR/BACK* (in Viewer position only)

[*]May be unavailable depending on recording size.
Tap *Options* to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

Opening Help
[Video Viewfinder] Tap *Options* ➜ Tap *Help*
Switching Cameras
[Video Viewfinder] Tap *Options* ➜ Tap *Switch Camera* ➜ Swipe finger to select camera ➜ Tap camera

---

Clamshell Open

Follow these steps to send recorded video via mail using *Video Camera for Mail*:
(Descriptions are for operation with handset keys, with Display in portrait orientation.)

1 ● ➜ *Camera* ➜ ●

2 *Video Camera for Mail* ➜ ●

Video Viewfinder
(Video Camera for Mail)

3 **Frame subject on Display** ➜ ●
● Recording starts after a tone.

4 ●

● Recording stops with a tone.

---

5 *Send* ➜ ●

6 *Save and Send* ➜ ●
● Mail Composition window opens.

7 **Complete message** ➜ �🅨

Switching Video Cameras
[Video Viewfinder] ✉ ➜ *Simple Setting* ➜ ● ➜ Select video camera ➜ ●

Operations in Video Viewfinder (Handset Keys)

Zoom In/Out	⑤/⑨
Adjust Brightness	⊙/⊙
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	#⋅⑤
Change Quality	✱⋅⑧
Pause/Resume Recording	While Recording, ⓨ[*]
Capture Still Images	While Recording, ✉
Cancel Recording (Start Over)	CLEAR/BACK
Open Help	⓪⋅⑧

[*]May be unavailable depending on recording size.
Press ✉ to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

Opening Saved Images via Album

Basics

Handset sorts saved images into up to 500 albums of the following preloaded categories automatically; create original albums as needed.

Person	Stores portraits sorted into albums by face registered via Detect Personal
Event	Stores images sorted into albums by period scheduled in Calendar
By Camera	Stores images sorted into albums by camera type
By Date	Stores images sorted into albums by captured date

Album Images & Source Files

● Album stores only file locations. (Source files are saved in Data Folder.) Images disappear from Album if source files are deleted, moved or renamed.
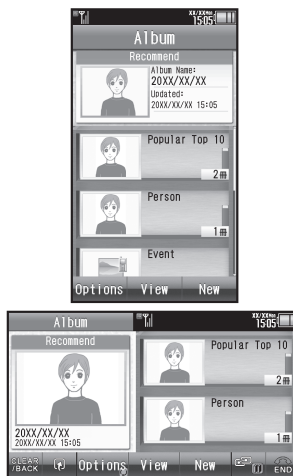
A single image can be sorted into multiple categories (e.g., a portrait captured using a specific camera is stored in *By Camera* and *Person*). In addition, a single image with multiple registered faces will be stored in each subject's album in *Person*.

Opening Albums

(Descriptions are for operation with handset keys, with Display in portrait orientation.)

1 🔲 **(Long)**

Album Window

● *Recommend* shows a recently updated album.
● *Popular Top 10* stores ten most frequently opened albums.

2 Select category ➜ ●

Album List

● Albums within appear.

3 Select album ➡ ●

20XX/XX/XX
20XX/XX/XX

Image List

4 Use ⊚ to select image
● To scroll quickly, swipe finger up or down across Display.

5 ●
● Image appears.

Opening Latest Album
After **1**, ⊛
Slide Show
After **2**, select album ➡ ☺ ➡ *Slide Show* ➡ ●
Copying/Moving Images to Other Albums
After **4**, ☺ ➡ *Past Other Album* (or *Re-Past Other Album*) ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select album ➡ ●
● Images in By Date or By Camera albums cannot be moved (*Re-Past Other Album* does not appear).

Creating Original Albums

Create new albums by selecting sort keys (from Person, Event and By Camera) and specifying date and time.
Follow these steps to create an album by selecting sort keys from Person and By Camera:

1 In Album window, ☺ ➡ *Create Original Album* ➡ ●

Original Album

Choose Portrait
No Setting
Select Event
No Setting
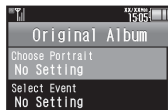
2 *Choose Portrait* ➡ ●

3 Select entry ➡ ●

Choose Portrait

Kimura Tetsuya

Natsuyama Sora

● Repeat **3** to complete selection.

4 ⊛

5 *Select Camera Type* ➡ ●

6 Select camera ➡ ●

Camera Type

☑ Smile Cam

■ Three-Shot Cam

● Repeat **6** to complete selection.

7 ⊛

8 *Create Album* ➡ ●

9 Enter name ➡ ●

10 *Yes* ➡ ●

Previewing Created Album
After **7**, *Album Preview* ➡ ●
■ To return, press ≡.

8

Camera & Imaging

8-19

Editing Albums

Some albums may not be edited.

Renaming Albums

1 **In Album window or album list, select album ➡ ⊠**

Options
Slide Show
Create Original Album
Change Album Name
Change a Cover 》
Details

2 *Change Album Name* ➡ ●

3 **Enter name ➡ ●**

Adding Images

Not available for By Date or By Camera albums.

1 **In album list, select album ➡ ⊠**

2 *Add Picture* ➡ ●

Add Picture
Picture Folder
DCIM Folder

3 **Select folder ➡ ●**

4 **Select image ➡ ●**

Adding Images via Data Folder
● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to Album* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select album ➡ ●

Deleting Albums

1 **In album list, select album ➡ ⊠**

2 *Delete* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

Adding Comments to Images

1 **In image list, select image ➡ ⊠**

2 *Edit Comment* ➡ ●

3 **Enter text ➡ ●**

20XX/XX/XX
20XX/XX/XX

Great view!

● Entered text appears in image list.

Other Editing Options
● Album image handling is similar to that of Data Folder. For more information, see the chapter "Data Folder & Memory Card."

8

Camera & Imaging

Advanced

ⓑ ●Changing album covers ●Sorting albums ●Opening album properties (**P.8-31**)

8-20

Opening Saved File via Review

Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file; access older files as needed.

1. ● ➔ *Camera* ➔ ●

2. *Review* ➔ ●

Review Window

● To end Review, press 🔚.

Enlarging Images
    After ❷, ●
Pausing/Resuming Video
    After ❷, ● (press to pause/resume)
Opening Help
    [Review Window] 0₊ℵ
Opening from Video Viewfinder
    [Video Viewfinder] ✉ ➔ *Review* ➔ ●

Accessing Older Files

1. In Review window, (y)

Pictures | DCIM | Videos
XXXXXX_XXXXXX. jpg

My Pict.

MailArt

Charact.

Date:XX/XX/XX 15:05
Size:XXXKB
Options   View   SwitchTab
                    Hold:1rss
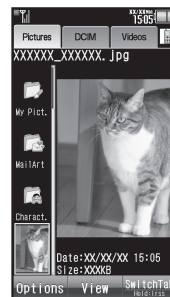
Review File List

● File list appears.
● Press (y) to toggle lists.

2. Select file ➔ ●
● File opens/plays.

8

Camera & Imaging

8-21

Picture Editor

Picture Editor Options

The following options are available.
Some images may not be editable
depending on file type and size.

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
Paint Pen	Scribble or sketch
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

Basic Operation

1 ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

2 *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

3 ⊠ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●

4 *Picture Editor* ➡ ●

Picture Editor Menu

5 Select effect ➡ ● ➡ Edit

● To start over, press [CLEAR BACK].

6 When finished, ⓨ

7 *Save as New* ➡ ●

● To overwrite, select *Overwrite* and press ●. (Omit 8.)

8 Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Canceling Effects
After 5, *Undo* ➡ ●
■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select *Redo* and press ●.

Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

Resize to Preset Size

1 **In Picture Editor menu,**
   Resize ▶ ●

Resize
Wallpaper
Power On/Off
Incoming Call
Alarm
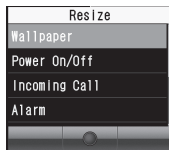
Resize Window

2 **Select size ▶ ●**

3 **Specify image area**

移動(Move) リサイズ(Resize)
Resize   Assign
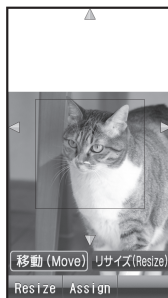
● If crop frame does not appear, omit 3.

4 ●
● Editing is complete.

Zooming In/Out
   After 3, ✉ ▶ ⬍ ▶ 4

Cropping Images

1 **In Resize window, Cut ▶ ●**

2 **Move + to the upper left**
   corner of the portion to crop
   ▶ ✉
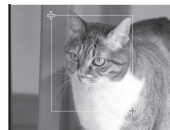
3 **Move + to the lower right**
   corner of the portion to crop
   ▶ ●

4 ●
● Editing is complete.

Specifying Image Area
   After 3, ⬍ ▶ 4
Zooming In/Out
   After 3, ✉ ▶ ⬍ ▶ 4

8

Camera & Imaging

8-23

Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

1. **In Picture Editor menu,** *Retouch* ➜ ●

   ```
   Retouch
   Sepia
   Sparkling
   Ripples
   Tile
   ```

2. **Select effect** ➜ ●

   Assign
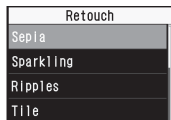
3. ●
   ● Editing is complete.

Adding Frames

1. **In Picture Editor menu,** *Frame* ➜ ●

   ```
   Frame
   Frame 1
   Frame 2
   Frame 3
   Frame 4
   View
   ```
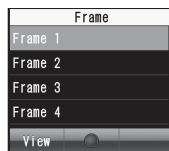
2. **Select frame** ➜ ●

3. ●
   ● Editing is complete.

Scribbling

Drag finger on Display to scribble or sketch.

1. **In Picture Editor menu,** *Paint Pen* ➜ ●

2. **Drag finger freely on image**

3. ●
   ● Editing is complete.

Changing Line Thickness & Color
   In ②, ▣ ➜ Select thickness ➜ ● ➜
   Select color ➜ ● ➜ ⊗
Using Pictograms
   In ②, ▣ ➜ ▣ ➜ Select size ➜ ●
   ➜ Select Pictogram ➜ ● ➜ ⊗
Canceling Last Action
   ● Press ▦.
Zooming In
   In ②, ⊗
Viewing Portions Outside Display
   In ②, drag arrows at the corners

8
Camera & Imaging

Advanced

8-24

Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

1 **In Picture Editor menu, *Face Arrange* ➜ ●**

Face Arrange
Collage:Right-half
Collage:Left-half
Grin
Mad
Parts
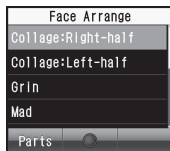
Face Arrange Menu

2 **Select type ➜ ●**

3 ●
 ● Editing is complete.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note
 ● When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1 **In Face Arrange menu, ☺ ➜ ☺**

 ● A rectangle appears with **+** in the upper left corner.

2 ☺ **Move + to top left of face ➜ ☺**

3 ☺ **Move + to bottom right of face**

FaceLine

---
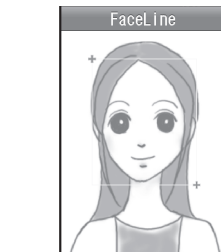
4 ●
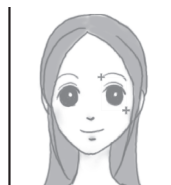
 ● Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

5 ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ *Save here* ➜ ●

 ● Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Composite

Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Split Picture	Combine up to four images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

2. *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

3. ⊠ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●

4. *Composite* ➡ ●

5. *Merge Panorama* ➡ ●

Merge Panorama
1 XXXXXX_XXXXXX.jpg
2 <Empty>
EFFECT Standard
Flip

● File selected in 2 is set as left image.

6. *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

7. *EFFECT* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●
   ● Editing is complete.

8. When finished, ⊡
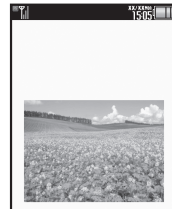
● Merged image appears.

9. ●

10. Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ●

Changing Images
After 7, select image ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select image ➡ ●
Switching Image Positions
After 5, ⊠

8 Camera & Imaging

8-26

Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

1. ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Phone/☷*

2. *Memory Card* ➜ ● ➜ *DPOF* ➜ ●

3. *Number of Copies* ➜ ●
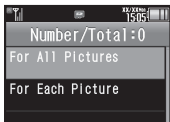
4. *For Each Picture* ➜ ● ➜ Select folder ➜ ●

5. Select image ➜ ☺
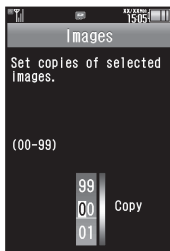
6. **Enter a number of copies to print ➜ ●**
   ● For more settings, repeat ⑤ - ⑥.

7. ⊽

Applying a Number to All Images
In ④, *For All Pictures* ➜ ● ➜ Enter a number of copies to print ➜ ●

Canceling Specified Number
In ⑥, enter *00* ➜ ● ➜ ⊽

Viewing Current Print Settings
In ③, *Check Settings* ➜ ●

Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.
● Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
● Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

1. ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ● ➜ *Pictures* ➜ ●

2. Select image ➜ ☺ ➜ *Print* ➜ ●

3. *Via Bluetooth* ➜ ● ➜ Select printer ➜ ●

4. *Yes* ➜ ●
   ● To cancel, press ⊽.

When Authorization Code is Required
Enter Authorization Code ➜ ●

Advanced

🔧 ●Changing print settings (**P.8-32**)

General

Changing function assigned to Camera Key (⌂)	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Camera Key* ➡ ● ➡ *Select function* ➡ ●

Photo Camera

Some functions may be unavailable or accessible via a different menu path depending on camera type.

Opening Help	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Help* ➡ ● ● Press ⓨ to toggle Help window for Touch Panel and key assignments.
Locking focus	In Photo Viewfinder, ⌂ ● Frame subject in center of Display first. ● To start over, press ⌂ again.
Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	**In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch** ● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set Set Remote Shutter to *On* beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Shutter Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Remote Shutter* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.

■ Photo Camera Settings (General)

Selecting Self-timer time/ repeat interval	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Self-timer* ➡ ● ➡ *Select time* ➡ ● ● For Self Timer Camera, select time or repeat interval.
Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Picture Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Select size* ➡ ●
Setting Center Auto Focus	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Center Auto Focus* ➡ ●
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Low Light* ➡ ●
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual Focus* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust focus ➡ ● ● To readjust focus, press ⌂.
Canceling Continuous AF	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Continuous AF* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Canceling Chase Focus	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Chase Focus* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing focus frame design	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Focus Mark* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●

Releasing shutter when subject smiles	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Shutter Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Shutter Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Egao* ➡ ●
Adjusting smile detection level	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Shutter Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Egao level* ➡ ● ➡ Select level ➡ ● ● Lower the level when detection is slow.
Releasing shutter when subject turns face to camera	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Shutter Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Shutter Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Furimuki* ➡ ●
Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Shutter Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Shutter Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ● Shutter click sounds for continuous shooting and panorama/scanner image capture are fixed.
Changing image quality	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Quality* ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●
Adjusting light sensitivity	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *ISO Sensitivity* ➡ ● ➡ Select level ➡ ●
Adjusting image color to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *White Balance* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●
Adjusting brightness	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Exposure* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level
Selecting shake reduction option	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Shake Reducing* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Capturing images in low light	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Long Exposure* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Switching indicator view	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

Selecting send option assigned to ⊙	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Send Key* ➡ ● ➡ *Short press* or *Long press* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Select send option separately for each key press method.
Changing save location	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Save Pictures to* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Selecting automatic save option	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Save* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● When *Off*, press ● after image capture to save.
Disabling quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Background Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing Mobile Light mode	In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Mobile Light* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● ● Mobile Light goes out automatically after three minutes. Reactivate mobile camera to re-illuminate it. ● Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.

■ **Photo Camera Settings (Tailored Cameras)**

Changing continuous shooting mode	In Rapid Shooting Camera or Three-Shot Camera Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Continuous Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ●
Changing Look Back Camera sound	In Look Back Camera Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Turn Sound* ➡ ● ➡ *Button 1* or *Button 2* ➡ ● ➡ Select sound ➡ ●
Changing Clock/Calendar type for Wallpaper Camera	In Wallpaper Camera Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Clock/Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●

8 Camera & Imaging

8-29

Changing panorama settings	**Start Here** In Panorama Camera or Scanner Camera Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ See below
	Hiding Guides *Assisting Lines* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
	Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture *AE-Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Enable* ➡ ●
Previewing panorama image	After panorama image capture, *Preview* ➡ ● ● Available when Auto Save is *Off*.
Changing panorama image preview method	After panorama image capture, *Preview* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ Select method ➡ ● ● Available when Auto Save is *Off*.
Changing exposure time for Long Exposure Camera	In Long Exposure Camera Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Long Exposure* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●

■ **Correction & Preview**

Correcting portrait auto focus images	**Start Here** After image capture, ☺ ➡ *Correlate to Face* ➡ ● ➡ See below ● Available when Auto Save is *Off*.
	Adjusting Face/Background Brightness *Against sun* ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions *Portrait* ➡ ● ➡ ●
Brightening backlit subjects (Dynamic Range Adjustment)	After image capture, ☺ ● May be unavailable or require access via Options menu depending on Auto Save setting.

| **Seeking guidance for better shots** | After image capture, tap 📷
 ● Follow onscreen instructions.
 ● May be unavailable depending on Auto Save setting. |

■ **My Camera**

| **Deleting My Cameras** | In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Switch Camera* ➡ ● ➡ Select My Camera ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete My Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● |
| **Editing My Cameras** | In Photo Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Switch Camera* ➡ ● ➡ Select My Camera ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit My Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *My Camera Name:* or *Note:* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ ✍ |

Video Camera

Opening Help	In Video Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Help* ➡ ● ● Press ✍ to toggle Help window for indicator descriptions and key assignments.
Selecting Self-timer time	In Video Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Self-timer* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Adjusting brightness	In Video Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Exposure* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Video Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Macro* ➡ ●
Adjusting focus manually	In Video Viewfinder, ☺ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual Focus* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust focus ➡ ● ● To readjust focus, press ⌨.

Locking focus	In Video Viewfinder, $\boxed{\begin{smallmatrix}{\mathscr{S}}\end{smallmatrix}}$ ● Frame subject in center of Display first. ● To start over, press $\boxed{\begin{smallmatrix}{\mathscr{S}}\end{smallmatrix}}$ again.
Changing image quality	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Video Quality* ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●
Activating automatic saving	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Save* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Changing save location	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Save Videos to* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Activating Mobile Light	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Mobile Light* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Mobile Light goes out automatically after three minutes. Reactivate mobile camera to re-illuminate it. ● Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)	While recording, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ● Captured images are saved when saving recorded clip; open them via Review or Data Folder.
Changing recording time/size	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Record Time/Size* ➡ ● ➡ *For Message* or *Extended Video* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Selectable item depends on camera type.
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ *Enlarge* ➡ ●

Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Microphone* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing video encoding	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Video Encode* or *Audio Encode* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Selectable item depends on camera type.
Disabling shake reduction	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Shake Reducing* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Prioritizing video frame rate	In Video Viewfinder, $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Save Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Prio Motion* ➡ ●

Album

Changing album covers	Start Here ● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Album* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select album ➡ $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Change a Cover* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Selecting from All Images Within *Select Picture List* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●
	Using Latest Image *Latest Picture* ➡ ●
Sorting albums	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Album* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select album ➡ ● ➡ $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Opening album properties	● ➡ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ *Album* ➡ ● ➡ Select category ➡ ● ➡ Select album ➡ $\textcircled{\tiny\textcircled{}}$ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

8

Camera & Imaging

Editing Images

■ Picture Editor

Using additional editing options	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Picture Editor* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Changing Text/Outline Color *Paste* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ Select text color ➡ ● ➡ ⚲ ➡ Select outline color ➡ ● ➡ Y
	Adding Text *Paste* ➡ ● ➡ *Free Text* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ✦ Move text ➡ ●
	Adding Dates *Paste* ➡ ● ➡ *Date* ➡ ● ➡ ✦ Move date ➡ ●
	Adding Stamps *Stamp* ➡ ● ➡ Select stamp ➡ ● ➡ ✦ Move stamp ➡ ●
	Correcting Image Parameters *Correction* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Rotating Images *Rotate* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ ●
	Converting File Format *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ Select format ➡ ● ● Changing file format may affect file size/image quality. ● To return to Picture Editor menu, press ⌫.
	Changing File Size *File Format* ➡ ● ➡ *File Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ● Changing file size may affect image quality. ● To return to Picture Editor menu, press ⌫.

■ Composite

Combining reduced images	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Composite* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Creating Split Picture *SplitPicture 480x854* or *SplitPicture 240x320* ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ When finished, Y ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ● Repeat from selecting *<Empty>* as needed.
	Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, ✉ ➡ *View Composite* ➡ ●
	Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ Select another ➡ ●
	Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, select image ➡ ✉ ➡ *Remove* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

DPOF

Changing print settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ✦ *Phone*/📇 ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *DPOF* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Adding Dates to Prints *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Add Date* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Creating an Index Print *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Index Print* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
	Resetting *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Mobile Camera

Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

● Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
● Leaving handset at high temperature may cause camera area to heat up, disabling mobile camera activation; wait a while and retry.
● Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

Cannot use Background Save or Auto Save

● Background Save/Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to *Ask Each Time*.

Display went dark during image capture

● 940SH camera has built-in mechanical shutter and ND filter. Strong shocks to handset during image capture may close mechanical shutter for camera protection, resulting in blank Viewfinder. Reactivate mobile camera to reopen the shutter.

Image is dark or distorted

● Avoid capturing strong light sources (sun, lamps, etc.) in the background.

Captured image appears all white

● When Long Exposure is active, images captured in daylight or good light appear all white.

Editing Images

Cannot save/send edited images

● Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF

Cannot specify print settings properly

● If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.

8

Camera & Imaging

8-33

Photo Camera Terms

Center Auto Focus

- Camera automatically selects center of the framed image as point of focus (**P.8-28**).

Continuous AF

- Focus continuously adjusts as focus-locked subject's position changes (**P.8-7**, **P.8-28**).

Chase Focus

- Focus tracks focus-locked subject as it moves within framed image (**P.8-7**, **P.8-28**).

Self-timer

- Releases shutter automatically after selected time elapses (**P.8-28**).

Long Exposure

- Capture images in low light (fireworks, night scenes, etc.) (**P.8-10**). Stabilize handset to reduce camera shake.

ISO Sensitivity

- Adjust light sensitivity (**P.8-29**). Higher ISO brightens low light images, but increases noise, making images grainy.

White Balance

- Select a mode (Daylight, Tungsten, Fluorescent, etc.) to adjust image color to lighting conditions (**P.8-29**).

9

Video & Music

Accessing Webcasting Sites (Japanese)

Access Yahoo! Streaming and other webcasting sites.

- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi may be required to use some services/content.
- Read information on the source site.

1 ● ➡ *Videos/Music* ➡ ●
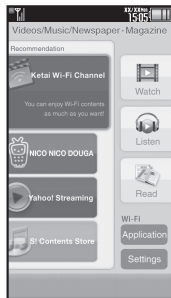
- If an update message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

2 Select item ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Menu Updates

Information window opens for Videos/Music menu update notice. Follow these steps to open it:

1 In Information window, *Menu Update Notif.* ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Suppressing Information Window for Menu Updates
- ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*✉
- ➡ *Video/Music Menu Updates* ➡ ●
- ➡ *Notification Off* ➡ ●

Streaming

Most media on webcasting sites are provided as streams; handset plays media while it downloads.

Playing Media Streams

1 Select file ➡ ●

- Playback starts.
- For playback window description, see **P.9-6** "Video Playback Window Description."

Stopping Playback
During playback, ⬛ ➡ *Back* ➡ ●
Playback Sound
- Streaming sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of 🅑Sound Output setting in Media Player.

Media Player Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 940SH.

● Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player or transfer files from PCs or AQUOS Blu-ray Disc recorders (hereafter "Blu-ray Disc recorders").

● Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music	**SD AUDIO**	**WMA**
(Handset/Memory Card)	**(Memory Card)**	**(Memory Card)**
Downloads/Transferred Files	Transferred SD-Audio Files	Transferred WMA Files

---

Video File Support

My Videos	**Recorder Contents/ SD VIDEO**
(Handset/Memory Card)	**(Memory Card)**
Downloads/Recorded Files	Transferred SD-Video Files

Playback Precautions

● Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.

● Playback stops for incoming calls.

● If battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.

● Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.

● Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming/progressive download). Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi) even while playback is paused.

Compatibility

● Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet.
Read information (price, expiry date, etc.)
on the source site.

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ●

   Media Player
   ♫ Music
   📹 Videos
   🌐 Streaming
   📲 MTP Mode
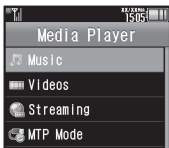
   Media Player Menu

2. *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ●

3. *Download Music* or
   Download Videos ➡ ●

   ● Follow the links to download media.

Saving Music Files from PCs

● Use software to convert music file format.
● For software usage and specifications, see
  the provider's website, etc.
● SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee
  compatibility with any software.
● USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files
● Copyright laws limit duplicated material
  to private use only.
● Files created with PC software, etc. may
  not play.
● Comply with copyright and other
  intellectual property laws when using
  obtained files.

Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to
940SH-compatible format (**P.17-20**), then
save to corresponding Memory Card
folder (**P.17-24**) via Mass Storage.
Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

Saving WMA Files

Follow these steps to save WMA files via
compatible software:
(Copy protected files can only be played
on the handset with which the files were
transferred.)

1. **Connect handset to a PC via
   USB Cable**

   USB Mode
   Modem/Data
   Mass Storage
   Recorder Link
   MTP Mode
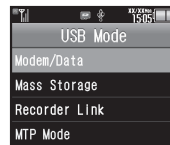
2. *MTP Mode* ➡ ●
   ● Copy music from PC. Refer to the
     software's help menu for operational
     instructions.

3. ⊙ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡
   Connection ends
   ● Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in ① **Does Not Appear**
● Follow these steps:
    ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity*
    ➡ *USB Mode* ➡ ● ➡ From ②
  ■ Operations on the PC may be required;
    if prompted, follow onscreen
    instructions.

Playing Music

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●

2. *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ●

3. *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ Select tab (folder)

   My Music

   Music Playlists Window

4. *All Music* ➡ ●

5. Select file ➡ ●

   Music Playback Window

   ● Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files. (WMA album art is not supported.)

Using Other Functions while Playing Music
After ⑤, ▦ or ☎
■ To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:
☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files
In ③, *SD AUDIO* or *WMA* ➡ ● ➡ From ④
Searching Music Files
After ④, ✉ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●
Lyric Display-Compatible Files
● Press ⓨ to display lyrics.

Music Playback Operations

Replay	☉ (Long Press: Rewind*)
Skip Forward	☉ (Long Press: Fast Forward*)
Volume Down	☺ (Long Press: Mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	☼
Pause	●
Stop	In Pause, ▦
Switch Sound Output	☎ (Long)
Open Help	0

*Release for playback.

Music Playback Window Description
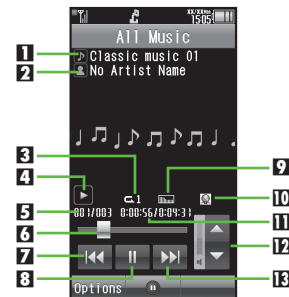
1	Title	8	Pause
2	Artist name	9	Sound Effects
3	Playback Mode	10	Information link
4	Status	11	Elapsed time
5	Track number	12	Volume control
6	Playback slider	13	Skip forward
7	Replay		

9

Video & Music

9-5

Advanced

✎ ●Resuming from stopped point ●Specifying start point ●Playing repeatedly or randomly ●Changing Sound Effects (And more on **P.9-8**)

Playing Video

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●

2. *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ●

3. *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●

   Playlist
   ■ All Videos
   ■ Playlist 1
   ■ Playlist 2
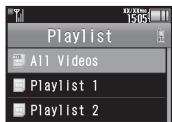
   Video Playlists Window

4. *All Videos* ➡ ●

5. Select file ➡ ●
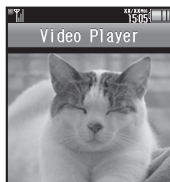
   Video Player

   Video Playback Window

6. [CLEAR/BACK] ➡ Playback stops

Playing Video Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders
   In 3, *Recorder Contents* ➡ ● ➡ 5
Playing SD VIDEO Files
   In 3, *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ 5
Searching Video Files
   After 4, ☺ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●
At Alarm Time
● Playback pauses.
Video Recorded on Other Devices
● Video image may appear rotated.

Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see **P.9-5** "Music Playback Operations."

Replay	⊙ (Long Press: Rewind*)
Skip Forward	⊙ (Long Press in Pause: Advance Frame, Long Press: Fast Forward*)
Toggle Display Size	2

*Release for playback.

Video Playback Window Description

1 XXXXXX_XXXXXX
2 No Author
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode	10	Pause

9

Video & Music

Advanced

●Resuming from stopped point ●Specifying start point ●Accessing linked information ●Switching audio output to wireless device ●Playing repeatedly or randomly ●Changing Sound Effects ●Changing playback size ●Setting Backlight status ●Hiding linked information (**P.9-8** - **9-9**)

Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre.
Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to プレイリスト*1*:

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●

2. *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ●

   Music
   Last Played Music
   My Music
   SD AUDIO
   WMA
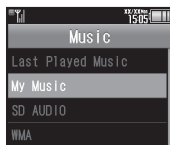
3. *My Music* ➡ ●

4. *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉

   All Music
   Classic music ...
   No Artist Name 0:04:31
   Classic music ...
   No Artist Name 0:06:07
   Pop music 01
   Options
   Add to Playlist
   Search
   Sort   》
   Details
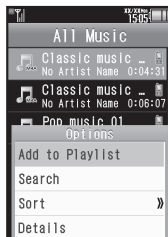
5. *Add to Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ プレイリスト*1* ➡ ●

Renaming Playlists

1. In Playlists window, select Playlist ➡ ✉

   My Music
   🎵 Music   Ring Tones
   📁 All Music
   📁 プレイリスト 1
   Options
   Add New Playlist
   Details
   Edit List Title
   Delete Playlist
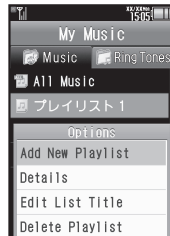
2. *Edit List Title* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

   My Music
   🎵 Music   Ring Tones
   📁 All Music
   📁 Best Selection
   📁 プレイリスト 2
   📁 プレイリスト 3

Advanced

🖐 ●Organizing Playlists ●Sorting files ●Opening properties ●Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files ●Deleting All WMA files ●Downloading Contents Keys (**P.9-9** - **9-10**) ●Organizing Playlists ●Sorting files ●Downloading Contents Keys ●Opening properties ●Deleting SD VIDEO files ●Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders (And more on **P.9-10** - **9-11**)

Media Playback

■ Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Last Played Music* or *Last Played Video* ➡ ●
Specifying start point	During playback, ✉ ➡ *Time Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●
Accessing linked information	During playback, ✉ ➡ *Access Web Link* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ 🔵*Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ●

■ Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	**Start Here** During playback, ✉ ➡ *Playback Mode* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Repeat One File *Repeat* ➡ ●
	Repeat All Files *Repeat All* ➡ ●
	Play Randomly *Random* ➡ ●
	Repeat Randomly *Random Repeat* ➡ ●
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, ✉ ➡ *Sound Effects* ➡ ● ➡ Select effect ➡ ●

Changing illumination settings	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Music Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Enabling Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

■ Video

Some functions may be unavailable depending on file.

Playing repeatedly or randomly	**Start Here** During playback, ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Playback Mode* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Repeat One File *Repeat* ➡ ●
	Repeat All Files *Repeat All* ➡ ●
	Play Randomly *Random* ➡ ●

Changing Sound Effects	During playback, ⊠ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Sound Effects* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select effect ➜ ◉
Changing playback size	During playback, ⊠ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Display Size* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select size ➜ ◉
Setting Backlight status	During playback, ⊠ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Backlight* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select option ➜ ◉ ● Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight settings.
Hiding linked information	During playback, ⊠ ➜ *Settings* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Web Link Setting* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Off* ➜ ◉

Managing Music Files

Organizing Playlists	[Start Here] ◉ ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Media Player* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ *My Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ ◌ Select tab (folder) ➜ See below
	Adding New Playlists ⊠ ➜ *Add New Playlist* ➜ ◉ ➜ Enter name ➜ ◉
	Deleting Playlists Select Playlist ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete Playlist* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ◉
	Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist ➜ ◉ ➜ Select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ◉
	Changing File Order Select Playlist ➜ ◉ ➜ Select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Change Order* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select target location ➜ ◉

Sorting files	◉ ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Media Player* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ *My Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ ◌ Select tab (folder) ➜ *All Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Sort* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select option ➜ ◉
Opening properties	[Start Here] ◉ ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Media Player* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ See below
	SD AUDIO Files *SD AUDIO* ➜ ◉ ➜ *All Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Details* ➜ ◉
	Other Files *My Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ ◌ Select tab (folder) ➜ Select Playlist ➜ ◉ ➜ Select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Details* ➜ ◉
Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files	[Start Here] ◉ ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Media Player* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ *SD AUDIO* ➜ ◉ ➜ See below
	Deleting Single Files *All Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete Track* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ◉ ● Source files will be deleted.
	Deleting All Files *All Music* ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Delete All Tracks* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ◉ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ◉ ● Source files will be deleted.
	Editing Title/Artist *All Music* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Edit* ➜ ◉ ➜ Select item ➜ ◉ ➜ Enter title or name ➜ ◉

9

Video & Music

9-9

Deleting All WMA files	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete All WMA* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Source files will be deleted.	**Sorting files**	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *All Videos* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Downloading Contents Keys	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ● ➡ *My Music* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ Select tab (folder) ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file (with ✍) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.	**Downloading Contents Keys**	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *All Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file (with ✍) ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.

Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**	**Opening properties**	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Adding New Playlists ✉ ➡ *Add New Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●		**SD VIDEO Files** *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlists Select Playlist ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●		**Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders** *Recorder Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
	Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●		**Other Files** *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
	Changing File Order Select Playlist ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Order* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●	**Deleting SD VIDEO files**	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Source files will be deleted.

9

Video & Music

9-10

Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Recorder Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Checking Memory Card memory status	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Recorder Contents* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Memory Remaining* ➡ ●
Deleting files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Recorder Contents* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Single Files Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	All Files ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Music

How do I delete files in All Music?

● Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs·Tones).

WMA files do not appear (WMA files are not transferable)

● Did you use 940SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
● Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform *Delete All WMA* and re-transfer the files.
● Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)
● WMA files may be corrupted; perform *Delete All WMA* and retry.

Cannot play WMA files

● Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform *Delete All WMA* and retry.

Video

How do I delete files in All Videos?

● Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

Cannot play video files

● Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.

10

**S! Applications &
Widgets**

10-1

Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 940SH-compatible S! Applications, including games.

- Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use S! Applications over Wi-Fi.

Remote Control (Familink Remote)
- Use *ファミリンクリモコン for AQUOS* S! Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

1 ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ●
2 *S! Appli Library* ➡ ●

S! Appli Library

3 Select application ➡ ●

Network S! Applications
- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls
- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Opening S! Appli Notification History
In ➋, *Notification History* ➡ ●

Exiting S! Applications

1 🔚

Exit?
Suspend
Resume
End
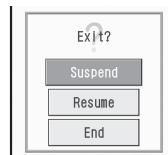
2 *End* ➡ ●

Pausing S! Applications
In ➋, *Suspend* ➡ ●
Resuming S! Applications
● ➡ *Resume* ➡ ●
- Select *Cancel* to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select *End* to exit the S! Application.

Advanced

✋ ●Downloading S! Applications ●Adjusting S! Application sound volume ●Canceling surround effect ●Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions ●Setting S! Application to activate in Standby ●Setting Permissions ●Opening properties ●Moving S! Applications to Memory Card ●Changing S! Application settings ●Deleting S! Applications ●Restoring default S! Application settings ●Restoring default S! Appli Library ●Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 940SH ●Opening Java™ license information (**P.10-6** - **10-7**)

Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/ functions immediately from Standby.

何だその日は

Widgets

とくするクーポン   地域設定すると
                              天気や防災情報
                              を取得できます

【S!速報ニュースとは？】   S! Quick News &
[S!速報ニュースとは？]   S! Friend's Status Widget

OPEN

XX/XX/XX[Mon]   15:05

✉   ⠿MENU

Obtaining Widgets

1 ● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ●

Mobile Widget
📧 Widget Store
📱 Widget Contents
📊 Widget History
🔧 Settings

Mobile Widget Menu

2 *Widget Store* ➡ ●
● Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets
● Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:
  [Mobile Widget Menu] *Widget Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select widget ➡ ✉ ➡ *Install* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Activating Single Widgets
  [Mobile Widget Menu] *Widget Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select widget ➡ ● ➡ ●

Deleting Widgets

1 **In Mobile Widget menu, *Widget Contents* ➡ ●**

2 **Select widget ➡ ✉**
● *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* cannot be deleted.

3 *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting All Widgets
  In 2, *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況* ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
■ If there is a widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears; follow onscreen prompt.

Advanced

🖐 ●Opening properties ●Opening widget notification history ●Canceling automatic updates ●Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan ●Hiding confirmation outside Japan ●Disabling widget notifications ●Disabling cookies ●Deleting cookies (**P.10-8**)

S! Applications & Widgets

10

Saving Widgets to Standby

1 ⟨⟩

2 Use ⟨⟩ to select ▣ (OPEN) ➜ ●

Widget Tab

Standby Shortcut Tab

3 Select widget ➜ ●
 • Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
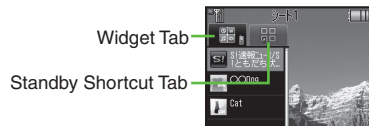
4 Use ⟨⟩ to specify target location ➜ ●

Using Pointer
 • After ❶, Long Press ⟨ʏ⟩ to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc.
 • To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press ⟨ʏ⟩.

Using Widgets

1 ⟨⟩ ➜ Use ⟨⟩ to select widget ➜ ●
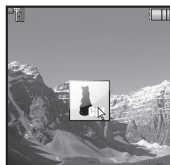
2 ●
 • Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

Using Sheets

Paste widgets and Standby Shortcuts on each sheet; toggle sheets to use them.

Toggling Sheets

1 ⟨⟩ ➜ ⟨ʏ⟩

↓ ⟨ʏ⟩

 • To toggle further, press ⟨ʏ⟩ or ⟨☞#⟩.
 • Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
 • Save widgets as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Advanced

🔧 ●Logging in to Yahoo! JAPAN ●Moving widgets ●Slowing pointer speed ●Editing sheet names ●Locking sheets (And more on **P.10-8** - **10-9**)

Saving Widgets on Other Sheets

1 **In Mobile Widget menu,**
Widget Contents ➔ ●

2 **Select widget ➔ ✉**

3 **Set as StbyShortcut ➔ ●**

4 **Select sheet ➔ ●**

5 **Specify target location ➔ ●**

Removing Widgets from Standby

1 **◎ ➔ Use ✤ to select**
widget ➔ ✉

2 **Operation ➔ ●**
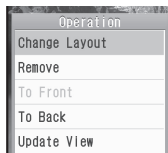
3 **Remove ➔ ●**

4 **Yes ➔ ●**

Using S! Quick News &
S! Friend's Status Widget

940SH is preloaded with *S!速報ニュース/S!とも*
だち状況 (S! Quick News & S! Friend's
Status widget) that shows S! Quick News and
S! Friend's Status information in Standby.
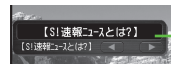
⎯⎯ S! Quick News &
S! Friend's Status Widget

View Settings

■ **Setting View Pattern**

1 **◎ ➔ Use ✤ to select**
S! Quick News & S! Friend's
Status widget ➔ ✉

2 **Settings ➔ ● ➔ Pattern**
Setting ➔ ●

3 **Select item ➔ ● (✔) ➔ ⊻**

■ **Switching View**

1 **◎ ➔ Use ✤ to select**
S! Quick News & S! Friend's
Status widget ➔ ✉

2 **Operation ➔ ● ➔ Switch**
Pattern ➔ ●

● Repeat the above steps to switch the
view.

Advanced

🖑 ●Removing widgets at once by sheet ●Adding news items ●Changing news scroll speed ●Showing unread news only ●Assigning members
●Managing members (**P.10-9**)

S! Applications & Widgets

10

10-5

S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ *Download S! Appli* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Application Volume* ➡ ● ➡ **Adjust level** ➡ ●
Canceling surround effect	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Surround* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Calls & Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Showing Calls** Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Show Call Notice* ➡ ● **Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail** *Incoming Message* ➡ ● ➡ *Message Priority* ➡ ● **Showing Alarm Notice** *Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Notice* ➡ ● **Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice** *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ *Start Notice* ➡ ●

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Activating Screensaver** *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● **Setting Screensaver** *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *As Screensaver* ➡ ● ● *As Screensaver* appears for compatible S! Applications. ● Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset. **Changing Screensaver Activation Time** *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Activation Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ● **Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart** *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ *Stop Auto Start* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Setting Permissions	Start Here ● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Permission* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations** Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● **Resetting Permission Settings** *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Opening properties	● ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select application ➡ ⦿ (☐/✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ⌧ ➡ *Move to Card* ➡ ⦿ • When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose *Yes* or *No* and press ⦿. • Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing ⌧. • Some S! Applications may not be moved to Memory Card.
Changing S! Application settings	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below
	Activating Notification Setting *Notification Setting* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *On* ➡ ⦿
	Setting Backlight Status *Backlight* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select option ➡ ⦿ • Selecting *Normal Settings* applies Display Backlight settings.
	Disabling Backlight Flashing *Backlight* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Blink* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
	Disabling Vibration *Vibration* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Deleting S! Applications	⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Appli Library* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select application ➡ ⌧ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ • Handset Code may be required. • Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.
Restoring default S! Application settings	⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Restoring default S! Appli Library	⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Memory All Clear* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ • Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) • Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications; Near Chat access restriction will be canceled.
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 940SH	⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Synchronization* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Opening Java™ license information	⦿ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Information* ➡ ⦿

S! Applications & Widgets

10

10-7

Mobile Widget

■ Managing

Opening properties	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Widget Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select widget ➡ ✉ ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ● Select widget other than *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況*.

■ Widget History

Opening widget notification history	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Widget History* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Showing All Text** Select record ➡ ✉ ➡ *View full text* ➡ ● **Deleting a Record** Select record ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Deleting All Records** Select record ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Settings

Canceling automatic updates	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Refresh* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *AutoConnect Abroad* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding confirmation outside Japan	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Use Abroad* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling widget notifications	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling cookies	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Cookies* ➡ ● ➡ *Disabled* ➡ ●
Deleting cookies	● ➡ *Widget* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Delete Cookies* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Operations in Standby

Selecting widget display option	🕐 ➡ ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Widget* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ● Choose *Off* to disable widget display even when 🕐 is pressed.
Logging in to Yahoo! JAPAN	🕐 ➡ ✉ ➡ *Yahoo!JAPAN log in* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. ● To log out, select *Yahoo!JAPAN log out* in the above steps.
Moving widgets	🕐 ➡ Use ✛ to select widget ➡ ✉ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Change Layout* ➡ ● ➡ Specify target location ➡ ●
Moving widgets to front/back	🕐 ➡ Use ✛ to select widget ➡ ✉ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *To Front* or *To Back* ➡ ●
Updating view	🕐 ➡ Use ✛ to select widget ➡ ✉ ➡ *Operation* ➡ ● ➡ *Update View* ➡ ●

Removing widgets at once by sheet	[Start Here] $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Operate from List* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Remove* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	All Widgets *Remove All* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select sheet ➡ $\textcircled{y}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Selected Widgets *Select & Remove* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select widget ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ($\boxed{\checkmark}$) ➡ Complete selection ➡ $\textcircled{y}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Slowing pointer speed	$\textcircled{c}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Cursor Speed* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Slow* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

■ **Sheets**

Editing sheet names	[Start Here] $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Sheet Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Change Sheet Name* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	Renaming Select sheet ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Enter name ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Resetting All Sheet Names $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Locking sheets	[Start Here] $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Sheet Settings* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Set Sheet Lock* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	Activating Lock Select sheet ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *On* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Changing Method for Temporary Access *Unlock Method* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *No Password* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ● Press $\textcircled{c}$, then select $\boxed{\text{🔒}}$ and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to unlock sheet temporarily.

■ **S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)**

Adding news items	$\textcircled{c}$ ➡ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Operation* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Content Menu* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Add News* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *S! Quick News List* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *登録はこちら* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select genre ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select item ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Changing news scroll speed	$\textcircled{c}$ ➡ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Operation* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Content Menu* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *News Display* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *News Speed* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select speed ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Showing unread news only	$\textcircled{c}$ ➡ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Operation* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Content Menu* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *News Display* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Target News* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Unread Only* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

■ **S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)**

Assigning members	$\textcircled{c}$ ➡ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Operation* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Content Menu* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Assign Member* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select category ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select entry/ member ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *(Empty)* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
Managing members	[Start Here] $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Use $\textcircled{\diamond}$ to select member ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ ➡ *Operation* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Content Menu* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ See below
	Deleting Members *Delete* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Changing Member Order *Move* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ $\textcircled{\scriptsize\boxdot}$ (Up) or $\textcircled{y}$ (Down) ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	Changing Member Icons *Change Icon* ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ $\textcircled{\bullet}$

S! Applications & Widgets

10

10-9

S! Applications

Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- Memory Card memory may be low or the S! Application may already be saved.

S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings

- Regardless of setting, a notice appears for Screensaver S! Applications.

Keitai Wi-Fi connection failure confirmation appears upon starting S! Application

- Handset may be outside Wi-Fi range. Move into range or cancel *Switch from Wi-Fi to 3G* in Switch Notification.

11

Handy Extras

Calendar

Opening Calendar

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ●

Calendar Window

Toggling View

Press ☉ to toggle Calendar window:

1Month View

3Month View

6Month View
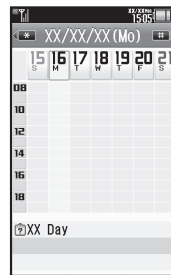
Week View

Key Assignments

■ All Views

Open Previous Page	※
Open Next Page	#
Open Help	0

■ 1Month/3Month View

| Select Date | ⊕ |
| Go to Current Date | 5 |

■ 6Month View

| Go to Current Month | 5 |
| Select Month | ⊕ |

■ Week View

| Select Date | ⊙ |
| Select Time Block | ⊙ |

Advanced

●Changing default view ●Jumping to specified date ●Changing date color ●Selecting task view option ●Adding stamps (1Month/3Month View)
●Hiding schedules ●Saving additional holidays ●Hiding/showing holidays (**P.11-39**)

Saving Schedules

Follow these steps to save subject, Category, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details:
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

1 **In Calendar window, select date ➡ ●**

2 **<Add New Entry> ➡ ●**

3 **Enter subject ➡ ●**

4 **⊙ Preset ➡ Select Category ➡ ●**

5 **Enter start date/time ➡ ●**

6 **End: ➡ ● ➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●**

7 **Alarm: ➡ ●**

8 **Alarm Time: ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⊗**

9 **Description: ➡ ● ➡ Enter schedule details ➡ ●**

10 **⊗ ➡ Saved**

Selecting Category from History
In 4, ⊙ *History* ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ From 5
Selecting Custom Category
In 4, ⊙ *Definable* ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ From 5
All-Day Schedule
In 5, ✉ ➡ ● ➡ From 9
Custom Alarm Time
In 8, *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ ⊗ ➡ From 9

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

✍ ●Setting Location ●Creating Categories ●Saving repetitive schedules ●Editing entries ●Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ●Changing Alarm volume ●Selecting Vibration option ●Changing illumination settings (And more on **P.11-40** - **11-41**)

11-3

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

Calendar Alarm

Conference
20XX/XX/XX 15:55
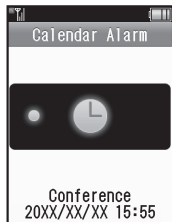
Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press ●,
  ☎ or ⬚.
Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key
  other than ●, ☎ or ⬚.
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset
  returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls.
  Information window opens after handset
  returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks

1 **In Calendar window, select
  date ➡ ●**

XX/XX/XX (Mo)
⊕ <Add New Entry>
🔔 📅Conference
    16:00-17:00
🔔 🍴Meet-up
    19:00-19:15
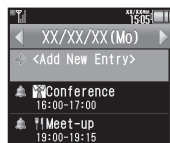
Schedule List

2 **Select schedule or task ➡ ●**

3 **☎ ➡ Standby returns**

Opening Task List
  In **2**, select task ➡ ☺ ➡ *Go to
  Tasks* ➡ ●
Accessing Secret Entries
  [Calendar Window] ☺ ➡ *Unlock
  Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset
  Code ➡ ●

Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved
from Messaging message list.

1 **In schedule list, select
  schedule ➡ ●**

2 **☺ ➡ *Related Mail* ➡ ●**
  ● Related message opens.
  ● To return to schedule window,
    press ⬚.

Deleting Message from Schedule
  After **1**, ● ➡ *Related Mail:* ➡ ● ➡
  Yes ➡ ● ➡ ☺

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

✎ ●Searching entries ●Checking memory status ●Deleting all entries ●Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) ●Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month/3Month View) ●Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) (**P.11-41**)

Information Link

Set to show or hide the following information in Calendar.

Reservation List	TV Timer and TV Recording Timer entries
Birthday	Birthdays entered in Phone Book
What is today? (Japanese)	Preset anniversaries, commemorative days, etc.

1. **In Calendar window,** ⊠

2. *Calendar Settings* ➡ ●

3. *Data to Show* ➡ ●

4. **Select item** ➡ ● (□/✓)

5. ⊗

Editing TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

1. **In schedule list, select entry** ➡ ⊠

2. *Edit* ➡ ●

3. **Edit** ➡ ⊗

Deleting Entries
In ②, *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
■ Timer is canceled.

Making Birthday Calls

1. **In schedule list, select entry** ➡ ⊠

2. *Call* ➡ ● ➡ **Select phone number** ➡ ●
   ● Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

Sending Birthday Messages
In ②, *Mail* ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ ⊗

Deleting Schedules

■ **One Entry**

1. **In schedule list, select schedule** ➡ ⊠

2. *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *This Appointment* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries of the Day**

1. **In Calendar window, select date** ➡ ⊠

2. *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All This Day* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Tasks

Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ●

   Tasks
   All Incomplete Completed
   <Add New Entry>

2. *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●

3. Enter subject ➡ ●

   Due Date & Time

   20XX XX XX
   20XX / XX / XX
   20XX XX XX

   14   04
   15 : 05
   16   06

   ▪No limit
   Check   Accept

4. Enter due date/time ➡ ●

   New Entry
   Subject:
   Birthday
   Due Date:
   XX/XX/XX 16:00
   Alarm:
   No Alarm

5. *Alarm:* ➡ ●

   Alarm
   Alarm Time:
   No Alarm
   Assign Tone/Video:
   Alert 1
   Duration:
   10 sec.
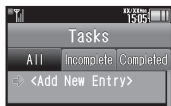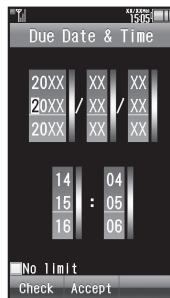
6. *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⊗

7. *Description:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter task details ➡ ●

8. ⊗ ➡ Saved

Task with No Due Date/Time
   In ❹, ✉ ➡ ● ➡ From ❼
Custom Alarm Time
   In ❺, *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ ⊗ ➡ From ❼

Advanced

🔟 ●Hiding tasks ●Editing tasks ●Setting priority ●Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ●Changing Alarm volume ●Selecting Vibration option ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode ●Changing illumination settings (**P.11-42**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.
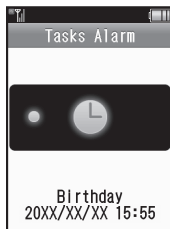
Tasks Alarm

Birthday
20XX/XX/XX 15:55

Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press $\odot$, $\boxed{\textstyle\frown}$ or $\boxed{\text{CLEAR}}$.
Stopping Alarm to Open Task
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than $\odot$, $\boxed{\textstyle\frown}$ or $\boxed{\text{CLEAR}}$.
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

1 $\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ $\odot$

Tasks
All Incomplete Completed
<Add New Entry>

Birthday
XX/XX/XX 16:00

Task List

● Use $\odot$ to open completed or uncompleted task list.

2 Select task ➡ $\odot$

Task
Birthday
20XX/XX/XX
16:00
20XX/XX/XX
15:55
Normal

3 $\boxed{\textstyle\frown}$ ➡ Standby returns

Accessing Secret Entries
After ❶, $\circledcirc$ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily*
➡ $\odot$ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ $\odot$
Marking Tasks as Completed
After ❶, select task ➡ $\circledcirc$

Deleting Tasks

■ **One Entry**
1 In task list, select task ➡ $\circledcirc$
2 *Delete* ➡ $\odot$
3 *This Task* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Yes* ➡ $\odot$

■ **All Completed Tasks**
1 In task list, $\circledcirc$
2 *Delete* ➡ $\odot$
3 *All Comp. Tasks* ➡ $\odot$ ➡
Yes ➡ $\odot$

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

$\overset{\mathcal{d}}{\circ}$ ●Searching tasks ●Sorting tasks by priority ●Checking memory status ●Deleting all tasks (**P.11-43**)

Using Alarms

Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:
(Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ●
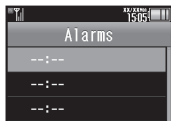
Alarm List

2 *--:--* ➡ ● ➡ Enter hour (24-hour format) ➡ Enter minutes ➡ ●

3 *Repeat:* ➡ ●
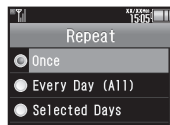
4 *Selected Days* ➡ ●
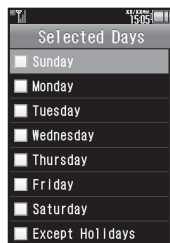
5 Select day ➡ ● (□ / ✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ (Y)

6 *Snooze:* ➡ ●

7 Select interval ➡ ●
● For custom intervals, select *Other*.

8 *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ●

9 Adjust level ➡ ●

10 *Duration:* ➡ ●

11 Select time ➡ ●
● For custom Duration, select *Other*.

12 (Y) ➡ Saved
● For more settings, repeat 2 - 12.

13 🔚 ➡ Standby returns

Activating Alarm Once or Daily
In 4, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➡ ● ➡ From 6
Selecting/Canceling All Days
In 5, ✉ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●
Excluding Holidays
In 5, select day ➡ ● (□ / ✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ *Except Holidays* ➡ ● ➡ (Y) ➡ From 6

Advanced

📖 ●Editing entries ●Saving entry name ●Changing Alarm tone/video ●Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time ●Changing illumination settings ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode ●Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (**P.11-43** - **11-44**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.


```
Alarm

Alarm 1
06:00
```

Stopping Alarm
● Press a key.
When Another Function is Active
● Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.
Incoming Calls
● Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze
While Snoozing, ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
● Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1 **In Alarm list, select entry ➡** ✉

2 *Switch Off* ➡ ●
● Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
In **2**, *Switch On* ➡ ●

Deleting Alarm

■ **One Entry**

1 **In Alarm list, select entry ➡** ✉

2 *Reset Alarm* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1 **In Alarm list, select entry ➡** ✉

2 *Clear All* ➡ ●

3 **Enter Handset Code ➡** ● **➡** *Yes* ➡ ●

Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:
- Complete TV Area Setup beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ **In PIM/ Life menu,** *Wakeup TV* ➡ ●

Wakeup TV List

2 *--:--* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter hour (24-hour format)** ➡ **Enter minutes** ➡ ●

Wakeup TV Menu

3 *Repeat:* ➡ ●

4 *Selected Days* ➡ ●

Selected Days
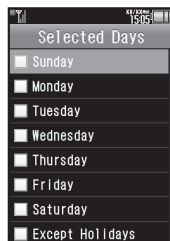
5 **Select day** ➡ ● (▢ / ✓) ➡ **Complete selection** ➡ ⓨ

6 *Channel:* ➡ ●

7 **Select channel** ➡ ●

8 ⓨ ➡ **Saved**
- For more settings, repeat 2 - 8.

9 ☎ ➡ **Standby returns**

Activating TV Once or Daily
In 4, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➡ ● ➡ From 6

Selecting/Canceling All Days
In 5, ✉ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Excluding Holidays
In 5, select day ➡ ● (▢ / ✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ *Except Holidays* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ➡ From 6

Canceling Alarm
- Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:
[Wakeup TV Menu] *Alarm On/Off:* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ From 8

Adjusting Alarm Volume
[Wakeup TV Menu] *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ● ➡ From 8

Advanced

✍ ●Editing entries ●Changing Alarm tone/video ●Changing illumination settings ●Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (**P.11-44**)

At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.


```
Wakeup TV



           08:00
```

Stopping Alarm Instantly
● While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.
When Another Function is Active
● TV may not activate depending on the function.
After TV is On for a Period of Time
● A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ● to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

1 **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➜ ⊠**

2 ***Wakeup TV Off* ➜ ●**
  ● Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
  In 2, *Wakeup TV On* ➜ ●

Deleting Wakeup TV

■ **One Entry**

1 **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➜ ⊠**

2 ***Reset Alarm* ➜ ●**

3 ***Yes* ➜ ●**

■ **All Entries**

1 **In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➜ ⊠**

2 ***Clear All* ➜ ●**

3 **Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* ➜ ●**

Handy Extras

11

Playing Animation with Music & Illumination

Play preset animations or downloaded
Flash® files with music and illumination.
Set playback time, volume and
illumination pattern as needed.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Relaxation Time*
➡ ●

2 Select type ➡ ●
● Animation appears.
● For *Flash®*, select a file and press ●.
■ Key LEDs do not illuminate for
soundless Flash® files.

Setting Relaxation Time

Follow these steps to set playback time,
volume and Key Illumination pattern:

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Relaxation Time*
➡ ●

2 *Settings* ➡ ●

Settings
Playback Time
5 min.
Volume
Level:3
Effect Illumination
Slow Colorful
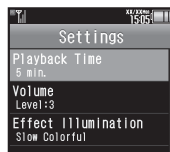
3 *Playback Time* ➡ ●

4 Select time ➡ ●
● For custom playback time, select *Other*.

5 *Volume* ➡ ●

6 Adjust level ➡ ●

7 *Effect Illumination* ➡ ●

Effect Illumi
Switch On/Off
On
Illumi. Pattern
Slow Colorful

8 *Key Pattern* ➡ ●

9 Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

10 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Changing Illumination Pattern
In 8, *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select
pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ●
➡ ⓨ
■ Light color is unselectable for some
patterns.
Setting Music to Control Illumination
In 8, *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to
Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
■ Key Illumination varies by music when
Link to Sound is set.
Disabling Illumination
In 8, *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡
● ➡ ⓨ

Using Calculator

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ●
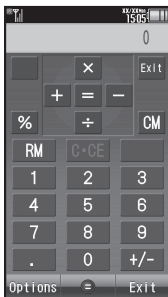
Calculator Window

2 Use Keypad to enter digits
➡ Calculate

3 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Key Assignments

+ (Add)	●
− (Subtract)	●
× (Multiply)	●
÷ (Divide)	●
= (Sum)	●
C·CE (Clear)	CLEAR
CM (Clear Memory)	●
RM (Recall Memory)	●
M+ (Add to Memory)	●
. (Decimal)	●
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	●
% (Percentage)	●

Memory Calculation
● Clear Memory before starting new
  Memory calculations.
● Numbers saved in Memory remain until
  handset is powered off.

Incoming Calls
● Calculations are not affected. End the
  call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function
Use ● to find definite percentage of a
known value.
Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000
    Enter *800,000* ➡ *x* ➡ *30* ➡ *%*
  ■ *240,000* appears.

Advanced

⌕ ●Copying calculation results ●Changing exchange rate for currency conversion ●Converting currencies (**P.11-45**)

Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

1 Enter amount ➡ ⓛ

Enter Cost:

#:DecimalPoint

5040
Accept | Cancel

2 ●

Category

◉ No Category
● Miscellaneous

3 Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Saved

Saving under Custom Category
In **3**, *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Checking Entries

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ●

Expenses Memo

Add New Expense
Totals
Edit Category

2 *Totals* ➡ ●

Totals

1)XX/XX/XX 15:05
Miscellaneo... 5040
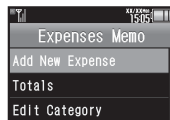
Expenses Memo List

3 ☎ ➡ Standby returns

Saving Entries to Notepad
[Expenses Memo List] ✉ ➡ *Save to Notepad* ➡ ●
■ All expense details are saved as a single entry.

Deleting Entries

■ **One Entry**

1 In Expenses Memo list, select entry ➡ ✉

2 *Delete Item* ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1 In Expenses Memo list, ✉

2 *Delete All* ➡ ●

3 Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Advanced

🅑 ●Changing Category of saved entry ●Changing amount ●Renaming Categories (**P.11-45**)

Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 940SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli
 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Lifestyle-Appli* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ●

Important Lifestyle-Appli Usage Notes
● Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
● Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction: Example: Making an electronic payment
● Lifestyle-Appli activation is not necessary.
● Transactions are possible even when handset power is off (if battery is adequately charged).
● Calls/Internet transmissions do not affect transactions.

1 **Place ☌ logo over reader/ writer ➡ Confirm scan results**
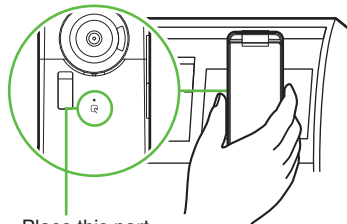
Place this part over reader/writer
● Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note
● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor
● If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
● Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

⚙ ●Enabling to view e-money balances ●Moving applications up/down Balance Info list ●Removing applications from Balance Info list (**P.11-45**)

Locking IC Card

IC Card Lock

Restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ●


```
Osaifu-Keitai
Lifestyle-Appli
IC Card Settings
```

2 *IC Card Settings* ➡ ●


```
IC Card Settings
IC Card Status
IC Card Lock
Off
Remote Lock
Interface Settings
Balance Info
Off
Set to Default
```
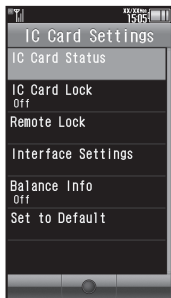
IC Card Settings Menu

3 *IC Card Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *On*
➡ ●

4 Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling IC Card Lock
In **3**, *IC Card Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

✎ ●Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands ●Opening IC Card properties ●Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient ●Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock ●Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (**P.11-45** - **11-46**)

11-16

Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

Mail Remote Lock	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

Mail Remote Lock

■ **Preparation on Handset**

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ●

2. *IC Card Settings* ➡ ●

3. *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Remote Lock
Mail Remote Lock
Off
Call Remote Lock
Off

4. *Mail Remote Lock* ➡ ●

Mail Remote Lock
Switch On/Off
Off
Remote Lock PW
Notice Settings
As Reply
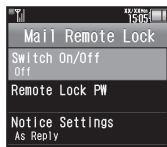
Mail Remote Lock Menu

5. *Remote Lock PW* ➡ ●

6. Enter password ➡ ●

7. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

8. *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙

Canceling Mail Remote Lock
In 5, *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

1. **Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject**
   ● After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

Handy Extras

11

11-17

Call Remote Lock

■ **Preparation on Handset**

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/
   Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ●

2. *IC Card Settings* ➡ ●

3. *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   Handset Code ➡ ●

   Remote Lock
   Mail Remote Lock
   Off
   Call Remote Lock
   Off

4. *Call Remote Lock* ➡ ●

   Call Remote Lock
   Switch On/Off
   Off
   Set Public Phone
   Off
   Phone No. to Lck 1
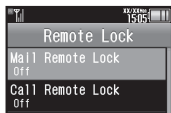
   Phone No. to Lck 2
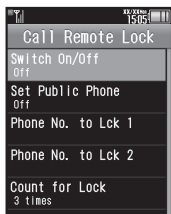
   Count for Lock
   3 times
   Call Remote Lock Menu

5. *Phone No. to Lck 1* or
   Phone No. to Lck 2 ➡ ●

   Phone No. to Lck 1
   Phone Book
   Phone Number
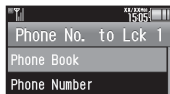
6. *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select
   entry ➡ ● ➡ Select phone
   number ➡ ●
   ● Select *Phone Number* to enter directly.

7. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●

8. *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

   Enabling Activation via Public Phone
   In ⑤, *Set Public Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *On*
   ➡ ● ➡ From ⑦
   Canceling Call Remote Lock
   In ⑤, *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡
   ● ➡ ⓨ

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Phone**
If handset cannot receive calls IC Card
Lock is not set.

1. **Using one of the specified**
   phones, call handset
   ● Send Caller ID.

2. **Handset receives call ➡**
   End the call
   ● The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

3. **Within three minutes, repeat**
   ① - ② twice

   IC Card Lock
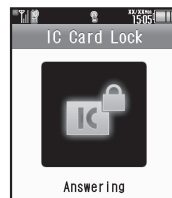
   Answering
   ● After the third Missed Call, IC Card
   Lock is set; a message announces
   Remote Lock activation. Confirm the
   message and end the call.

   If Series is Interrupted by Another Call
   ● Missed Call count is reset. Start over
   from the beginning.

Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.
- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see **P.11-46**.

Setting Simulated Call

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ **In PIM/ Life menu,** *Simulated Call* ➜ ●
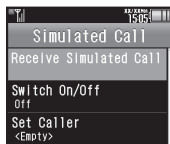
   ```
   Simulated Call
   Receive Simulated Call
   Switch On/Off
   Off
   Set Caller
   <Empty>
   ```
   Simulated Call Menu

2. *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●

3. *Set Caller* ➜ ●

   ```
   Set Caller
   Name:
   <Empty>
   Phone Number:
   <Empty>
   ```
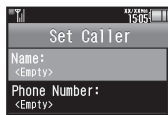
4. *Name:* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name** ➜ ●

5. *Phone Number:* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter phone number** ➜ ● ➜ ⊗

6. *Assign Tone* ➜ ● ➜ **Select tone/file** ➜ ●

7. ⊗ ➜ **PIM/Life menu returns**

When Name and Phone Number are Unset
- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Simulated Call
   [Simulated Call Menu] *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ● ➜ ⊗

Setting Wait Time
   [Simulated Call Menu] *Receive Timing* ➜ ● ➜ **Select time** ➜ ● ➜ ⊗

Using Simulated Call

Available with clamshell open.

1. ▶ **(Long)**
   - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
   - Ringtone stops after a period of time.

2. **In incoming Voice Call window, press** 🔄
   - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)

3. 🔚 ➜ **Standby returns**

When Receive Timing is Not *Immediately*
- Press 🔚 or ⌫ during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

✎ ●Starting via Simulated Call menu ●Clearing caller information ●Overriding Silent volume setting (**P.11-46**)

11-19

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops if battery runs low.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Stopwatch* ➡ ●
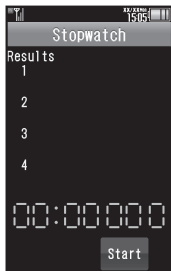
Stopwatch Window

2. ● ➡ **Stopwatch starts**

3. ● ➡ **Stopwatch stops**
   ● Press ● to resume.

4. ⌧ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Stopwatch ends**
   ● Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times
   While Stopwatch is running, ✉
Saving Records to Notepad
   After ❸, ✉ ➡ *Save to Notepad* ➡ ●
Resetting Records
   After ❸, ⌧ ➡ From ❷
Incoming Calls
● Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Using Countdown Timer

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌⊙
Clock/Gauge ➡ *Countdown Timer* ➡ ●

Countdown Timer

Enter Time
(1"-99'59")

99   59
00 : 00
01   01

+10
min +1min +30
sec
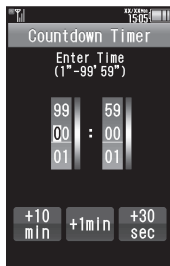
Timer Entry Window

2 **Enter minutes ➡ Enter seconds**

● Tap *+10min*, *+1min* or *+30sec* as needed.

3 ●

Countdown Timer

Time Remaining

01:10

Edit   Start
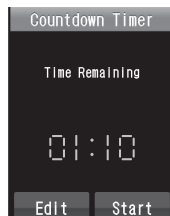
Countdown Timer Window

● Press 🖂 to change time.

4 ● ➡ **Countdown starts**
● Press ● to stop/resume countdown.

5 **Set time elapses ➡ Tone sounds**

6 🕾 ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Countdown Timer ends**

Using Timer Records
After **1**, 🖂 ➡ *Input History* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ From **4**
Resetting Countdown Timer
Stop countdown and 🖂
Incoming Calls
● Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.

Countdown Timer

Timer Expired

Stop

Stopping Tone Instantly
● Press ● or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)
When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call
● Tone sounds after the call.

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

👆 ●Changing illumination settings (**P.11-46**)

Opening World Clock

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ◌ *Clock/Gauge* ➜ *World Clock* ➜ ●

Local Time Zone

World Time Zone

2. ●

Set Time Zone Window

3. ◌ Select area ➜ ●

4. ☎ ➜ Standby returns

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)
[Set Time Zone Window] ⊗
■ To cancel, press ⊗.

Adding Custom Time Zone
[Set Time Zone Window] ✉ ➜ Enter city name ➜ ● ➜ + or - ➜ ◌ ➜ Enter time difference ➜ ●

Opening World Clock in Standby

1. ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➜ ●

2. *Standby Display* ➜ ●

3. *Clock/Calendar* ➜ ●

4. *World Clock (L)*, etc. ➜ ●

5. ☎ ➜ Standby returns

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

1. ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➜ *Hour Minder* ➜ ●

> Hour Minder
> Switch On/Off
> Off
> Select Time
> Every Hour
> Advanced

Hour Minder Menu

2. *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ *On* ➜ ●

3. *Select Time* ➜ ●

> Select Time
> ☑ 0:00
> ☑ 1:00
> ☑ 2:00

4. Select hour ➜ ● (☐/☑) ➜ Complete selection ➜ ⓨ

5. ⓨ ➜ Saved

6. 🕾 ➜ Standby returns

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume
In ②, *Advanced* ➜ ● ➜ *Volume:* ➜ ● ➜ Adjust level ➜ ● ➜ ⓨ ➜ From ⊟
Changing Hour Minder Duration
In ②, *Advanced* ➜ ● ➜ *Duration:* ➜ ● ➜ Select time ➜ ● ➜ ⓨ ➜ From ⊟
■ For custom Duration, select *Other*.
Selecting/Canceling All Hours
In ④, ☺ ➜ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➜ ●

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.
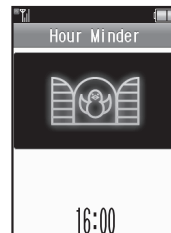
> Hour Minder
>
> 16:00

Stopping Tone Instantly
● Press a key.
When Another Function is Active
● Hour Minder does not activate.
Incoming Calls
● Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

1. In Hour Minder menu, *Switch On/Off* ➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ● ➜ ⓨ

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

👆 ●Changing Hour Minder tone/video ●Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time ●Changing illumination settings ●Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode ●Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (**P.11-47**)

Using Pedometer

Getting Started

- Count based on a pace of approximately 100 steps per minute over even terrain.
- Accuracy may be affected by course, terrain, walking style, etc.
- Avoid holding the handset; use a body worn case or a strap, or place handset inside a pocket or bag.
  - Avoid sudden/erratic movements.
- Steps are not counted in the following cases:
  - While handset is off
  - For the first few steps
  - While handset vibrates
- Handset use may affect accuracy.
- Use Pedometer only as a rough guide.

Adjusting Counter Sensitivity
● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➜ *Pedometer* ➜ ● ➜ *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Step Sensitivity* ➜ ● ➜ Select option ➜ ●
■ Select *Low* when steps seem overcounted; select *High* when they seem undercounted.

Saving Body Information

Weight and pace entry required to view full Pedometer data.

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➜ *Pedometer* ➜ ●
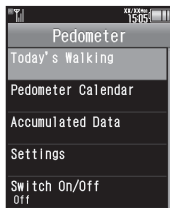
Pedometer Menu

2 *Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Body Info.* ➜ ●

3 Enter Handset Code ➜ ●

Body Info Menu

4 *Height* ➜ ● ➜ Enter height ➜ ●

5 *Weight* ➜ ● ➜ Enter weight ➜ ●

6 *Pace* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes* or *No* ➜ ●
- Choose *Yes* to enter pace automatically based on height.

7 Enter pace ➜ ● ➜ ⊠

Editing Body Information
[Body Info Menu] Select item ➜ ● ➜ Enter value ➜ ● ➜ ⊠
■ For *Pace*, automatic calculation confirmation appears (when height is entered).

Activating Pedometer

1 In Pedometer menu, *Switch On/Off* ➜ ●

2 *On* ➜ ●

Canceling Pedometer
In **2**, *Off* ➜ ●

Pedometer Indicator

When Pedometer is active, today's step count appears in Standby.

Viewing Step Count Records

1. **In Pedometer menu,** *Today's Walking* ➜ ⦿

2. ⦿

Steps Window

- Press ⊙ to toggle Hourly/Daily view.
- Press #⃣ to scroll down by page, or ✱⃣ to scroll up by page.

3. **Select time/date** ➜ ⦿
   - Hourly/daily step counts appear.

4. ☎ ➜ **Standby returns**

Resetting Today's Step Count
In ❷, ✉ ➜ *Reset Day's Data* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ⦿

Resetting Log
[Steps Window] ✉ ➜ *Walk Data Reset* ➜ ⦿ ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Yes* ➜ ⦿
■ Today's data is also reset.

Setting Targets

Information window opens, etc. when target is achieved for these items:

Steps	Walking Time
Exercise	Calories
Distance	Fat burned

1. **In Pedometer menu,** *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Target* ➜ ⦿

2. *Target Settings* ➜ ⦿

3. **Select item** ➜ ⦿ ➜ **Enter value/time** ➜ ⦿
   - Other target settings may consequently change.

Editing Targets
[Pedometer Menu] *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Target* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Target Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ Select item ➜ ✉ ➜ Enter value/time ➜ ⦿

When Target is Achieved
- A tone sounds and Information window opens. (Select *Goal Achievement* and press ⦿ to open Pedometer Calendar.) Follow these steps to mute achievement tone:
  [Pedometer Menu] *Settings* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Target* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Goal Announce* ➜ ⦿ ➜ *Off* ➜ ⦿

About Exercise (Ex)
- Ex and MET indicate amount and intensity of physical activity, respectively. Ex for walking is calculated by multiplying 3 METs by walking duration (hour).

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

👆 ●Changing Pedometer indicator ●Using Pedometer Calendar ●Checking accumulated data ●Resetting accumulated data ●Customizing achievement notice (**P.11-47** - **11-48**)

Using Compass

Available in clamshell open or Viewer position.

Opening Compass

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙
Clock/Gauge ➜ *Compass*
➜ ●

Compass Window

● Compass opens; use as a rough guide.

Adjusting Compass

1 In Compass window, ● ➜ ●
● Follow onscreen instructions.

Compass Indicator
● When map is open, compass indicator appears; follow these steps to hide it:
● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge*
➜ *S! GPS Navi* ➜ ● ➜ *NAVI Settings* ➜ ● ➜ *Compass Indicator*
➜ ● ➜ *Off* ➜ ●

Using S! GPS Navi

Use this GPS navigation service to pinpoint current location, find routes to destinations, and more.

- Provide current location to administrator upon request.
- Available in clamshell open or Viewer position.

Precautions

- Location Information accuracy may be affected when GPS satellite/radio station signal reception is poor. Use S! GPS Navi under the open sky.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from the provided Location Information.

Positioning

- Pinpoints current location using signals transmitted from GPS satellites.

Location Information Accuracy

- Probable distance from the actual position is classified into three accuracy levels, from level 1 (low) to 3 (high), indicated by the number of 🛰️s.
- A confirmation appears when accuracy level is 1 or 2; follow these steps:
  Yes or *No* ➡ ⦿

Starting Navi-Appli

1 ⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ⦿
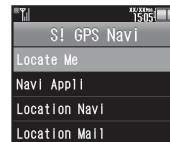
```
S! GPS Navi
Locate Me
Navi Appli
Location Navi
Location Mail
```
S! GPS Navi Menu

2 *Navi Appli* ➡ ⦿
- To disable confirmation, press ✉ before **3**.

3 *Yes* ➡ ⦿

Opening Navi Appli List
[S! GPS Navi Menu] *Navi Appli List* ➡ ⦿
- To activate Navi Appli, select one and press ⦿.

Selecting a Navi-Appli for S! GPS Navi
[S! GPS Navi Menu] *NAVI Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Select Navi Appli* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select application ➡ ⦿

11-27

Opening Location Log

1 **In S! GPS Navi menu,**
Location Logs ➜ ●

> Location Logs
> 20XX/XX/XX 15:05
> 20XX/XX/XX 14:00

2 **Select record** ➜ ●
● Details appear.

3 ⌧ ➜ **List returns**

Pinpointing Current Location

1 **In S! GPS Navi menu,**
Locate Me ➜ ●

> Your location
> information will
> be notified for
> **Yes**
> No
> ☐ Don't ask again.
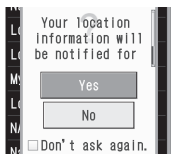
● To disable confirmation, press ✉
before 2.

2 *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **Positioning starts**
● Map of your current location appears.

Using My Location

Saving Location Information

Follow these steps to save current
location as a new entry:

1 **In S! GPS Navi menu,** *My*
Location List ➜ ●

> My LocationList
> New Entry
> 自宅
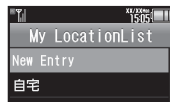
My LocationList Menu

2 *New Entry* ➜ ●

3 *Name* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name**
➜ ●

4 *Location Info* ➜ ●

5 *From Current Loc.* ➜ ● ➜
Positioning complete

6 ●
● When accuracy level is 1 or 2,
choose *No* and press ● to proceed
to 2.

7 ✉

Saving as Home
In 2, *自宅* ➜ ● ➜ From 4
Saving from Location Log
In 5, *From Location Logs* ➜ ● ➜
Select record ➜ ● ➜ ✉

Opening Entries

1 **In My LocationList menu,**
select entry ➜ ●

2 *Location Info* ➜ ●

> Details
> Name:
> Office
> Latitude:
> NXX. XX. XX
> Longitude:
> EXXX. XX. XX
> Positioning time:
> 20XX/XX/XX 15:05
> Loc info accuracy:

3 ⌧ ➜ **Details closes**

Deleting Entries

1 **In My LocationList menu,**
select entry

2 ✉ ➜ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ *Yes*
➜ ●

Handy Extras

11

11-28

Using Ichi Navi (Japanese)

Locate other S! GPS Navi-compatible handset users or lost handset.

● Ichi Navi requires a separate contract and initial settings.
● If Double Number is active, service uses Line A regardless of usage mode setting.
● For more about Ichi Navi, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**).

1 **In S! GPS Navi menu,**
Location Navi ▶ ●

● Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

Providing Location Information

Provide current location to administrator upon request.

● Location may be provided automatically upon administrator's request without confirmation.
● May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

1 **Location Information**
request arrives

Easy Position Req.
"Tanaka is searching for you."
Do you accept
Location Request?
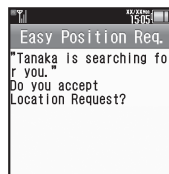
● A confirmation appears. (Message shown above is for reference only.)

2 ☺ **(provide) or** ☺ **(reject)**

Information

Information window opens after your location is provided manually (by pressing ☺) upon Location Information request or automatically upon administrator's request. Select the item and press ● to open log.

Handy Extras

11

11-29

Advanced

✎ ●Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically (**P.11-49**)

Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)

Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)

Microsoft® Word (.doc)

Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

● Some files may not appear correctly.
● Downloaded files are also supported.
● When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (**P.17-24**).

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
Doc./Rec. ➡ *Document
Viewer* ➡ ●

Other Documents
Product_List.xls   XXKB

2 Select file ➡ ●

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)
In open file, 🖫 (Long) ➡ Specify
portion ➡ ◌ ➡ *Zoom Out* or *Zoom
In* ➡ ●

Key Assignments

View Whole Page	●
Scroll	◌
View Upper Left	1
Toggle Full Screen View On/Off	2 / ◌
View Upper Right	3
Zoom Out	4 / ▶
Continuous Zoom Out	4 (Long) ▶ (Long)
View Center	5
Zoom In	6 / ◀
Continuous Zoom In	6 (Long) ◀ (Long)
View Lower Left	7
Jump to Page	8
View Lower Right	9
Open Help	0
Next Page	#
Previous Page	✳
Fit Width	◌
Rotate 90 Degrees	◌

Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
   Doc./Rec. ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

   Notepad
   <Add New Entry>

   Notepad List

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●
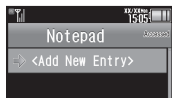
   Text:
   .a   0/8192

3 Enter text ➡ ●

4 Select Category ➡ ● ➡
   Saved

Sorting Entries Temporarily
   [Notepad List] ⊛
■ Press to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).
Changing Landscape Notepad List View
   [Notepad List] Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡
   Setting/Manage ➡ ● ➡ *Landscape*
   Display ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry
   [Text Entry Window] ☺ ➡ *Notepad*
   ➡ ● ➡ *Call Notepad* ➡ ● ➡
   Select entry ➡ ●

Opening Notepad

1 In Notepad list, select entry
   ➡ ●

   Notepad
   😊 Private
   Meeting time
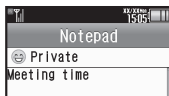
2 CLEAR/BACK ➡ **List returns**

Deleting Entries

■ **One Entry**

1 In Notepad list, select entry
   ➡ ☺

2 *Delete Item* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ **Selected Entries**

1 In Notepad list, select entry ➡
   ☺ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ●

2 *Multiple Selection* ➡ ● ➡
   Select entry ➡ ● (☐/☑)
   ➡ Complete selection ➡ ☺

3 *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Unchecking All
   In 3, *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

■ **All Entries**

1 In Notepad list, select entry ➡
   ☺ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ●

2 *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
   ➡ ●

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

✎ ●Editing Notepad ●Searching text within all entries ●Inserting Notepad text into message text ●Sending entries via S! Mail ●Creating text files
●Importing text files ●Checking memory status ●Opening properties (**P.11-49**)

Using ASCII Art

Inserting ASCII Art

1 In message text entry window, ☺ ➡ *Call ASCII Art* ➡ ●

ASCII Art

🈁 ガンバレ日本🈂
🈁 おめでとう🈂
🈁 花束🈂
🈁 私のおごり🈂
🈁 うらめしや🈂

2 Select entry ➡ ●

Message:
_a   126/30K
花束🈂↵

  ↓ ↵
    ↵
:🈂🈂:从从↵
\🈂)∩∩↵
\ /人 ◇↵
 (∋↵

by ちょー絵文字↵
http://emoz.jp/↵

Previewing ASCII Art
  In **2**, select entry ➡ ☺
■ Press ● to insert ASCII Art.

Editing Entries

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *ASCII Art* ➡ ●

ASCII Art

🈁 ガンバレ日本🈂
🈁 おめでとう🈂
🈁 花束🈂
🈁 私のおごり🈂
🈁 うらめしや🈂

ASCII Art List

2 Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●

Opening Entries
  In **2**, select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *View* ➡ ●
Adding New Entries
  In **2**, *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Create ASCII Art ➡ ●

Deleting Entries

1 In ASCII Art list, select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via *Record Caller Voice*.

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙
Doc./Rec. ➜ *Voice Recorder*
➜ ●
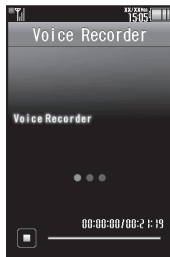
Recording Window

2 ● ➜ **Recording starts**

3 ● ➜ **Recording ends**
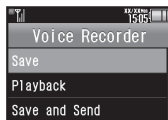
- For *Extended Voice*, recording is saved automatically.

4 *Save* ➜ ●

Play Before Saving
In ④, *Playback* ➜ ● ➜ Playback
starts ➜ 🔲 ➜ Playback stops
Starting Over
In ④, 🔲 ➜ From ②

Playback

1 In recording window, ✉ ➜
Ring Songs·Tones ➜ ●

2 Select file ➜ ●

Playing Files via Data Folder
● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ● ➜ *Ring
Songs·Tones* ➜ ● ➜ Select file ➜ ●

Playback Operations

Volume Control	⊙
Pause/Resume	●
Stop	🔲

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

Saving longer recordings Sending Voice files via S! Mail Switching storage media (**P.11-49**)

11-33

Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ●

Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Kanji Grabber
Scan Text
Scanned Results
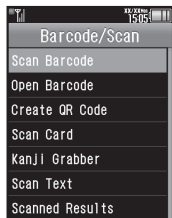
2 *Scan Barcode* ➡ ●

3 **Frame barcode in center of Display**

Normal Scanning
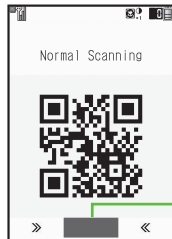
Focus Adjustment Bar

Scan Window

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

4 ● ➡ **Scan starts**
- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
- To cancel, press ⌫.

5 **Tone sounds ➡ Scan results appear**

Scan Result
XX Restaurant
[Open Hours]
Lunch: 11 am - 3 pm
Dinner: 6 pm - 10 pm
[Contact]
aabb@xxx.xx

Split Data
- After scanning, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over
After 5, ⌫ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From 3

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	☆
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	◎
Open Help	0

Advanced

●Scanning during text entry ●Scanning continuously ●Reading saved barcode images ●Saving scan results ●Saving to Notepad ●Saving linked info to Phone Book ●Opening saved scan results ●Using linked info ●Using images as Wallpaper ●Saving images & melodies ●Copying text (And more on **P.11-50** - **11-51**)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

Phone Book	My Details
Text Input	Ring Songs·Tones
Pictures	Notepad

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

1️⃣ ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◎
Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
➡ ●

```
          XX/XX/XX
          15:05
     Barcode/Scan
 Scan Barcode
 Open Barcode
 Create QR Code
 Scan Card
 Kanji Grabber
 Scan Text
```

2️⃣ *Create QR Code* ➡ ●

3️⃣ *Data Folder* ➡ ●

```
          XX/XX/XX
          15:05
     Data Folder
 Pictures
 Ring Songs·Tones
 Notepad
 Other Documents
```

4️⃣ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select
file or entry ➡ ●
● QR Code is created.

5️⃣ ●
● QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries
In 3️⃣, *Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ Select
entry ➡ ● ➡ 5️⃣

From My Details
In 3️⃣, *My Details* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ➡ 5️⃣

From Entered Text
In 3️⃣, *Text Input* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text
➡ ● ➡ 5️⃣

Switching Storage Media
In 5️⃣, ◎ ➡ *Save to* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone*
or *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ ●

Attaching to S! Mail
In 5️⃣, ◎ ➡ *Send As Message* ➡ ●
➡ Complete message ➡ ⊙

Incoming Calls
● QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ●

Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Kanji Grabber
Scan Text
Scanned Results
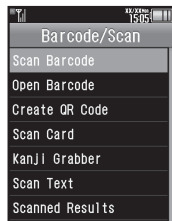
2 *Scan Card* ➡ ●

3 **Frame card on Display**

Scan Window

4 ●
- To cancel, press ⊙.

5 ● ➡ **Scan results appear**

Scan Result
木村
哲也
キムラ
03-1234-XXXX
03-1234-XXXX

6 ● ➡ ⊙
- New Phone Book entry is saved.

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit
- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:
  Yes ➡ ●

Switching Storage Media
After ⊟, ✉ ➡ *Save to* ➡ ● ➡ Select storage media ➡ ● ➡ ●

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture
After ⊟, ✉ ➡ *Add Image* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⊟

Starting Over
After ⊟, ⊙ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From 3

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	⊡
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	⊙
Open Help	0

Advanced

📖 ●Saving to Notepad ●Pasting to message text ●Copying text (**P.11-52**)

Scanning Text

Scan text and save it to Notepad, etc.
Available Modes:

Full	Capture text in full screen and scan a selected line
Line	Capture a few lines of text and scan a selected line

● To toggle mode, press ⓨ in scan window.
● Some text may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
➡ ●

Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Kanji Grabber
Scan Text
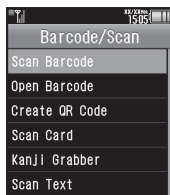
2 *Scan Text* ➡ ●
● To change mode, press ⓨ in scan window.

3 **Frame text in center of Display**

●XX Co., Ltd.
●YY Co., Ltd.
●ZZ Co., Ltd.
●✱✱ Co., Ltd.
●?? Co., Ltd.
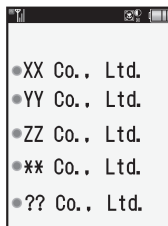
Scan Window

4 ● ➡ Scan starts
● To cancel, press ⓨ.

5 **Select line** ➡ ● ➡ **Scan results appear**

6 ●

Scanned Text
12/256
XX Co., Ltd.
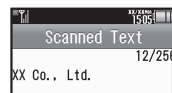
7 ☺ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

Correcting Text Type
After 5, ☺ ➡ *Change Mode* ➡ ●
➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ From 5
Editing Scanned Text
After 5, ☺ ➡ *Select/Edit* ➡ ● ➡
Select character ➡ Select alternative
from list or edit directly ➡ From 5
Starting Over
In 5, ⓨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From 3

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	🔄
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	⊙
Open Help	0

Handy Extras

11

Advanced

✎ ●Scanning and pasting during text entry ●Scanning more text ●Saving scan results ●Saving linked info to Phone Book ●Opening saved scan results
●Using linked info ●Pasting to message text ●Copying text (**P.11-52** - **11-53**)

Using Kanji Grabber

Scan a word of up to ten kanji and look it up in dictionaries.
Some text may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
Doc./Rec. ➡ *Barcode/Scan*
➡ ●

Barcode/Scan
Scan Barcode
Open Barcode
Create QR Code
Scan Card
Kanji Grabber
Scan Text
Scanned Results
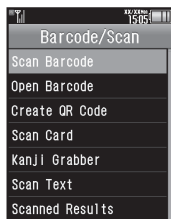
2 *Kanji Grabber* ➡ ●

3 **Frame kanji in Loupe**
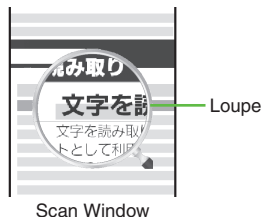
Scan Window

4 ●
● Scan results (kanji) appear.

5 ●

6 **Select dictionary** ➡ ● ➡
Search ➡ ●

7 **Select word, etc.** ➡ ●
● Definition/translation window opens.

Starting Over
In 5, ⊠ ➡ From 3

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	📷
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	⊙
Open Help	0

Advanced

� ●Scanning and pasting during text entry (**P.11-53**)

Calendar

■ View Settings

Changing default view	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Default View* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Jumping to specified date	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ 8 ➡ Enter date ➡ ●
Changing date color	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ See below **By Days of the Week** ⊠ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Color* ➡ ● ➡ *By Week* ➡ ● ➡ Select day ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● **By Date** Select date ➡ 4 ➡ Select color ➡ ● ● Not available in 6Month View. **Resetting "By Date" Colors** ⊠ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Color* ➡ ● ➡ *Reset Color* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Selecting task view option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Tasks View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Adding stamps (1Month/3Month View)	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ 2 ➡ Select stamp ➡ ●
Hiding schedules	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Secret:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠

Saving additional holidays	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Holiday* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Private* ➡ See below **Adding Holidays** *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ **Editing Added Holidays** Select holiday ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Date:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ ⊠
Hiding/showing holidays	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Holiday* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Private* or *Public* ➡ Select holiday ➡ ● (/ ✓)

■ **Saving/Editing Schedules**

Setting Location	● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select date ⟹ ● ⟹ Select entry ⟹ ● ⟹ ● ⟹ *Location:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Enter location ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊛
Creating Categories	[Start Here] ● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊞ ⟹ *Calendar Settings* ⟹ ● ⟹ *Set Category* ⟹ ● ⟹ See below
	Renaming Categories Select Category ⟹ ● ⟹ *Edit Category Name* ⟹ ● ⟹ Enter name ⟹ ●
	Changing Icons Select Category ⟹ ● ⟹ *Change Icon* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select Pictogram ⟹ ●
	Resetting ⊞ ⟹ *Reset Settings* ⟹ ● ⟹ Enter Handset Code ⟹ ● ⟹ *Yes* ⟹ ●
Saving repetitive schedules	● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select date ⟹ ● ⟹ Select entry ⟹ ● ⟹ ● ⟹ *Repeat:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select frequency ⟹ ● ⟹ Enter repeat time ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊛ ● Repeat time is not available for *Every Year*.

Saving S! Friend's Status information	[Start Here] ● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select date ⟹ ● ⟹ Select entry ⟹ ● ⟹ ● ⟹ *S! Friend'sStatus:* ⟹ ● ⟹ *Link Setting:* ⟹ ● ⟹ *Linked* ⟹ ● ⟹ See below
	Availability *Answer Status:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Edit ⟹ ⊛ ⟹ ⊛ ⟹ ⊛ ● Set Category first.
	Comment *Comment:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Enter text ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊛ ⟹ ⊛ ● Set Category first.
Editing entries	● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select date ⟹ ● ⟹ Select entry ⟹ ● ⟹ ● ⟹ Select item ⟹ ● ⟹ Edit in the same manner as saving schedules ⟹ ⊛
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	[Start Here] ● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select date ⟹ ● ⟹ Select entry ⟹ ● ⟹ ● ⟹ *Alarm:* ⟹ ● ⟹ See below
	Alarm Tone/Video *Assign Tone/Video:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select folder ⟹ ● ⟹ Select tone/file ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊛ ⟹ ⊛ ● Select start point if required.
	Duration *Duration:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select time ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊛ ⟹ ⊛
Changing Alarm volume	● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊞ ⟹ *Alarm Settings* ⟹ ● ⟹ *Alarm Volume:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Adjust level ⟹ ●
Selecting Vibration option	● ⟹ *Tools* ⟹ ● ⟹ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ⟹ ● ⟹ ⊞ ⟹ *Alarm Settings* ⟹ ● ⟹ *Vibration:* ⟹ ● ⟹ Select option ⟹ ●

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ ☺ ▶ *Alarm Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *For Manner Mode:* ▶ ● ▶ *Ring* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Changing illumination settings	[Start Here] ● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ ☺ ▶ *Alarm Settings* ▶ ● ▶ *Effect Illumination:* ▶ ● ▶ See below
	Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination *Switch On/Off* ▶ ● ▶ *Link to Sound* ▶ ● ▶ ⊗
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Illumi. Pattern* ▶ ● ▶ Select pattern ▶ ● ▶ Select color ▶ ● ▶ ⊗ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Key Pattern* ▶ ● ▶ Select pattern ▶ ● ▶ ⊗ ● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound.*
	Disabling Illumination *Switch On/Off* ▶ ● ▶ *Off* ▶ ● ▶ ⊗

■ **Managing Schedules**

Searching entries	[Start Here] ● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ See below
	By Part of Subject 6⋯ ▶ Enter text ▶ ●
	By Category 9⋯ ▶ Select Category ▶ ●
Checking memory status	● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ Select date ▶ ☺ ▶ *Memory Status* ▶ ●

Deleting all entries	● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ ☺ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *All Appointments* ▶ ● ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)	[Start Here] ● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ See below
	Within One Week Select date ▶ ☺ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *All This Week* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
	Up to the End of Previous Week Select date ▶ ☺ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Up to Last Week* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month/3Month View)	[Start Here] ● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ See below
	Within One Month Select date ▶ ☺ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *All This Month* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
	Up to the End of Previous Month Select date ▶ ☺ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *Up to Last Month* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●
Deleting entries in six months (6Month View)	● ▶ *Tools* ▶ ● ▶ In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* ▶ ● ▶ ☺ ▶ *Delete* ▶ ● ▶ *All This 6Months* ▶ ● ▶ *Yes* ▶ ●

Handy Extras

11

11-41

Tasks

■ Task List

Hiding tasks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Secret:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

■ Saving/Editing Tasks

Editing tasks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving tasks ➡ ⓨ
Setting priority	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority:* ➡ ● ➡ Select priority ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Select task ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm:* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Alarm Tone/Video** *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ➡ ⓨ ● Select start point if required. **Duration** *Duration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ➡ ⓨ
Changing Alarm volume	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Selecting Vibration option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Changing illumination settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Alarm Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination:* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ **Changing Illumination Pattern** *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns. **Changing Key Illumination Pattern** *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ ● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*. **Disabling Illumination** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

■ Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ◙ ➡ *Find* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	By Part of Subject *By Subject* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●
	By Due Date *By Due Date* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ●
Sorting tasks by priority	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ◙ ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ *Priority* ➡ ●
Checking memory status	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ◙ ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ●
Deleting all tasks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ◙ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *All Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Alarms

Editing entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
Saving entry name	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Subject:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
Changing Alarm tone/video	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩ ● Select start point if required.
	Using Customized Screen Tone/Video *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⟨ʏ⟩ ● Select *Link to Sound* to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Changing illumination settings	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarm* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*.
	Disabling Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Alarms* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to World Clk* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

Wakeup TV

Editing entries	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➡ ⊙
Changing Alarm tone/video	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Select start point if required.
	Using Customized Screen Tone/Video *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
Changing illumination settings	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination:* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*.
	Disabling Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Wakeup TV* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Handy Extras

11

Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, ☺ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ●
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Money Converter* ➡ ● ➡ *Exchange Rate* ➡ ● ➡ *Domestic* or *Foreign* ➡ ● ➡ Enter rate ➡ ●
Converting currencies	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Calculator* ➡ ● ➡ Enter amount of money ➡ ☺ ➡ *Money Converter* ➡ ● ➡ *To Domestic* or *To Foreign* ➡ ● ● Set Exchange Rate first.

Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Totals* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
Changing amount	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Totals* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ☺ ➡ *Change Amount* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●
Renaming Categories	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Expenses Memo* ➡ ● ➡ *Edit Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli* or *Lifestyle-Appli* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ● ● For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications. ● Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ☺ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
Removing applications from Balance Info list	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Interface Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Opening IC Card properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *IC Card Status* ➡ ●

Handy Extras

11

Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient	[Start Here] ⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Remote Lock* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Mail Remote Lock* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Notice Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Send Notice* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below
	Changing Recipient *To Set Recipient* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Set Recipient* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select method ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ⦿ ➡ 🔤 ➡ ⓨ ● Omit step of pressing 🔤 when selecting *Phone Book* as setting method.
	Disabling Notice *Off* ➡ ⦿ ➡ 🔤 ➡ ⓨ
Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock	⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Remote Lock* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Call Remote Lock* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Count for Lock* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Enter Missed Call count** ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ
Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings	⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Set to Default* ➡ ⦿ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿

Simulated Call

Starting via Simulated Call menu	⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Receive Simulated Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ● Simulated Call starts immediately regardless of Receive Timing setting. ● Settings remain even after starting Simulated Call during setup.
Clearing caller information	⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Set Caller* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ ➡ ⓨ
Overriding Silent volume setting	⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ In PIM/Life menu, *Simulated Call* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *For Silent Mode* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Ring* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ

Countdown Timer

Changing illumination settings	[Start Here] ⦿ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⨀ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Countdown Timer* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Effect Illumi.* ➡ ⦿ ➡ See below
	Changing Illumination Pattern *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select pattern ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select color ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern *Key Pattern* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select pattern ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ
	Disabling Illumination *Switch On/Off* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⓨ

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ➡ ⊙ ● Select start point if required.
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ➡ ⊙ ● Select *Link to Sound* to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.
Changing illumination settings	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination:* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ **Changing Illumination Pattern** *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns. **Changing Key Illumination Pattern** *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*. **Disabling Illumination** *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙

Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *For Manner Mode:* ➡ ● ➡ *Ring* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ➡ ⊙
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Hour Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ *Link to World Clk:* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ➡ ⊙

Pedometer

Changing Pedometer indicator	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Pedometer* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●
Using Pedometer Calendar	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Pedometer* ➡ ● ➡ *Pedometer Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ● ● Degree of achievement appears. ● Press [✳] or [#] to view previous or next month.
Checking accumulated data	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Pedometer* ➡ ● ➡ *Accumulated Data* ➡ ● ● Change in body information is reflected in the data.
Resetting accumulated data	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Pedometer* ➡ ● ➡ *Accumulated Data* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Reset Walk Data* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Averages are also reset.

Handy Extras

11

11-47

Customizing achievement notice	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *Pedometer* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Target* ➡ ● ➡ *Goal Announce* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Changing Tone *Goal Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
	Changing Tone Volume *Goal Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
	Selecting Vibration Option *Vibration* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
	Changing Duration *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ● For custom Duration, select *Other* and press ●.

S! GPS Navi

Sending current location via mail	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *Location Mail* ➡ ● ➡ **Positioning complete** ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ☺ ● When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose *No* and press ● after positioning, then complete message.
Changing map source URL	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *NAVI Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Map URL Settings* ➡ ● ➡ **See below**
	Adding URLs *<Not set>* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ●
	Setting Destination URL Select URL ➡ ●
	Viewing/Editing/Deleting URLs Select URL ➡ ☺ ➡ *Display*, *Edit* or *Delete* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen prompt.

Disabling positioning	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *NAVI Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Positioning Lock* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Selecting Location Information transmission option	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *NAVI Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Location Info* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Using My Location & Location Log	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *My Location List* or *Location Logs* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry or record ➡ **See below**
	Opening Map ☺ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
	Showing Routes via Navi Appli ☺ ➡ *Go to* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
	Inserting into Message Text ☺ ➡ *As Msg. Text* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ☺
	Saving to Phone Book ☺ ➡ *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ☺ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Saving Location Log records to My Location	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *Location Logs* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ☺ ➡ *Set as My Location* ➡ ● ➡ *Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ☺
Deleting Location Log records	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ➡ *S! GPS Navi* ➡ ● ➡ *Location Logs* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* or *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Omit record selection step when deleting all records.

Handy Extras

11

11-48

Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Clock/Gauge* ⮕ *S! GPS Navi* ⮕ ● ⮕ *NAVI Settings* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Inform Location* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Do not Show* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Enter Handset Code** ⮕ ●

Notepad

Editing Notepad	[Start Here] ● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ See below	
	Editing Text	
	Edit Text ⮕ ● ⮕ **Edit** ⮕ ●	
	Changing Category	
	Change Category ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select Category** ⮕ ●	
Searching text within all entries	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Search* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Enter text** ⮕ ●	
Inserting Notepad text into message text	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Send* ⮕ ● ⮕ *As Message Text* ⮕ ● ⮕ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Complete message** ⮕ ⊠	
	● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.	
Sending entries via S! Mail	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Send* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Via Message* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Complete message** ⮕ ⊠	
Creating text files	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Setting/Manage* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Create Text File* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Enter name** ⮕ ● ⮕ *Save here* ⮕ ●	

Importing text files	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Setting/Manage* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Import Text File* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select file** ⮕ ●
Checking memory status	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Setting/Manage* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Memory Status* ⮕ ●
Opening properties	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Notepad* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select entry** ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Details* ⮕ ●

Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Voice Recorder* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Record Time* ⮕ ● ⮕ *Extended Voice* ⮕ ● ⮕ ● ⮕ **Recording starts** ⮕ ● ⮕ **Recording ends**
	● Insert Memory Card to record in *Extended Voice* mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Voice Recorder* ⮕ ● ⮕ ● ⮕ **Recording starts** ⮕ ● ⮕ **Recording ends** ⮕ *Save and Send* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Complete message** ⮕ ⊠
	● Available in *For Message* mode.
Switching storage media	● ⮕ *Tools* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ⮕ *Voice Recorder* ⮕ ● ⮕ ⊠ ⮕ *Save Recording to* ⮕ ● ⮕ **Select option** ⮕ ●
	● Available in *For Message* mode.
	● Set to *Ask Each Time* to select media after every recording.

Handy Extras

11

11-49

Scan Barcode

Scanning during text entry	**Start Here** In a text entry window, ⊚ ➡ *Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Code* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Pasting All Scan Results ●
	Pasting a Part of Scan Results ⊚ ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Scanning continuously	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Continuous Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ● Choose *Yes* to continue scanning or *No* and press ● to view scan results.
Reading saved barcode images	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Open Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ●
Saving scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
Saving to Notepad	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●

Saving linked info to Phone Book	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ⊚ ➡ *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⊙ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*. ● When *MEMORY:* appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.
Opening saved scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scanned Results* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ● Select a file and press ⊚ to rename files, open properties or delete files. ● Some files may not open.
Using linked info	**Start Here** ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ ● ➡ Frame barcode in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Dialing Numbers Select phone number ➡ ● ➡ 🔄
	Sending Messages Select mail address ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊙ ● When *MAILTO:* appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Mail Composition window.
	Accessing Internet Sites Select URL ➡ ●

Using images as Wallpaper	$\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Select image** ➡ $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ *Set as Wallpaper* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Vertical* or *Horizontal* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ ● For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Saving images & melodies	$\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Select file** ➡ $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ *To Data Folder* ➡ $\odot$
Opening or playing files	$\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Select file** ➡ $\odot$
Using images for System Graphics	$\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Select image** ➡ $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ *As System* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Select item** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Specify image area** ➡ $\odot$ ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Pasting to message text	[Start Here] $\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ *Send Message* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ See below
	All Text $\odot$ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Complete message** ➡ $\textcircled{Y}$ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	Selected Text $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ **Select first character** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Complete message** ➡ $\textcircled{Y}$ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	[Start Here] $\odot$ ➡ *Tools* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ $\odot$ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ *Scan Barcode* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ See below
	Text $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ *Copy* ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Select first character** ➡ $\odot$ ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ $\odot$
	Number, Address or URL **Select number, mail address or URL** ➡ $\textcircled{c}$ ➡ *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* ➡ $\odot$

Handy Extras

11

Scan Card

Saving to Notepad	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Card* ➡ ● ➡ Frame card in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●
Pasting to message text	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Card* ➡ ● ➡ Frame card in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send Message* ➡ ● ➡ See below **All Text** ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊙ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. **Selected Text** ✉ ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ ⊙ ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Card* ➡ ● ➡ Frame card in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●

Scan Text

Scanning and pasting during text entry	In a text entry window, ✉ ➡ *Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ Frame text in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ ●
Scanning more text	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ Frame text in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Continue Part* or *Scan More* ➡ ● ● Select *Continue Part* to enter additional text or *Scan More* to enter text after a line break.
Saving scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ Frame text in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Save* ➡ ●
Saving linked info to Phone Book	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ ● ➡ Frame text in center of Display ➡ ● ➡ Select line ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ✉ ➡ *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⊙ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Opening saved scan results	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/ Scan* ➡ ● ➡ *Scanned Results* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ● Select a file and press ✉ to rename files, open properties or delete files. ● Some files may not open.

Using linked info	Start Here (●) ➡ *Tools* ➡ (●) ➡ (⌄) *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ (●) ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ (●) ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ (●) ➡ **Select line** ➡ (●) ➡ (●) ➡ **See below**
	Dialing Numbers Select phone number ➡ (●) ➡ (☎)
	Sending Messages Select mail address ➡ (●) ➡ Complete message ➡ (Y)
	Accessing Internet Sites Select URL ➡ (●)
Pasting to message text	Start Here (●) ➡ *Tools* ➡ (●) ➡ (⌄) *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ (●) ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ (●) ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ (●) ➡ **Select line** ➡ (●) ➡ (●) ➡ (✉) ➡ *Send Message* ➡ (●) ➡ **See below**
	All Text (●) ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ (●) ➡ **Complete message** ➡ (Y) ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	Selected Text (✉) ➡ **Select first character** ➡ (●) ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ (●) ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ (●) ➡ **Complete message** ➡ (Y) ● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Copying text	Start Here (●) ➡ *Tools* ➡ (●) ➡ (⌄) *Doc./Rec.* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ (●) ➡ *Scan Text* ➡ (●) ➡ **Frame text in center of Display** ➡ (●) ➡ **Select line** ➡ (●) ➡ (●) ➡ **See below**
	Text (✉) ➡ *Copy* ➡ (●) ➡ **Select first character** ➡ (●) ➡ **Highlight text range** ➡ (●)
	Number, Address or URL Select number, mail address or URL ➡ (✉) ➡ *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* ➡ (●)

Kanji Grabber

Scanning and pasting during text entry	In a text entry window, (✉) ➡ *Scan* ➡ (●) ➡ *Kanji Grabber* ➡ (●) ➡ **Frame kanji in Loupe** ➡ (●) ➡ **Scan results appear** ➡ (●)

Handy Extras

11

Osaifu-Keitai®

❓ Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

❓ Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check ⌇ logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

❓ Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Wakeup TV

❓ TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

Voice Recorder

❓ Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

❓ Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

❓ Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

❓ Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

❓ Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

❓ Cannot read barcode images in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

❓ Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

❓ Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

12

Entertainment

Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.
Packet transmission fees apply (except
when downloading via Wi-Fi).

Registering S! Quick News Items

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ●

S! Quick News Menu

2. *S! Quick News List* ➡ ●
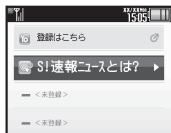
S! Quick News List

3. *登録はこちら* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
➡ ●

● Handset connects to the Internet.

4. Select item ➡ ●
● Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

1. In S! Quick News List,
select item ➡ ●
● Title list appears.

2. Select title ➡ ●
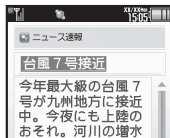
● Press ☺ to return to title list, or ⅀ to
open next title.

Updating Items Manually
[S! Quick News List] Select item ➡
⅀ ➡ *更新* ➡ ● ➡ *一件* or *全件* ➡ ●

Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

Entertainment

12

12-2

S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Packet transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *S! Information Channel/
   Weather* ➡ ●

   ```
   S!Info. Channel
   What's New

   Back Issue

   Registration/Cancel
   ```

   S! Information Channel Menu

2. *Registration/Cancel* ➡ ●
   ● Handset connects to the Internet.
   Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

1. **While Information window appears,** *S! Info. Channel*
   ➡ ●
   ● S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
   ● S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

2. ☎ ➡ **Standby returns**

Opening Unread Latest Issue
   [S! Information Channel Menu]
   What's New ➡ ●
Opening Back Issues
   [S! Information Channel Menu] *Back Issue* ➡ ● ➡ Select date ➡ ●

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

Manual Update
   [S! Information Channel Menu]
   Weather Indicator ➡ ● ➡ *Manual Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Entertainment

12

Advanced

✎ ●Suppressing Information window for new received info ●Changing Display Size ●Changing scroll unit ●Copying text ●Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby ●Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates ●Suppressing Information window for weather updates (And more on **P.12-14** - **12-15**)

Downloading Content (Japanese)

Download media content via Yahoo! Keitai.

Via S! Contents Store

1 ● ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ●

Entertainment Menu

2 *S! Contents Store* ➔ ●
● Handset connects to the Internet.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Via Free Content Providers

Download free Graphic Mail templates,
e-Books, games, etc.
Content downloads are free, however,
they require Internet connection incurring
packet transmission fees (except when
downloading via Wi-Fi).

1 **In Entertainment menu,**
Free Contents ➔ ●

2 **Select provider** ➔ ●
● Handset connects to the Internet.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1 ● ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ●

Entertainment Menu

2 *S! Contents Store* ➔ ●
● Follow onscreen instructions.
● Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

Note
● Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site (シャープメーカーサイトSH-web in Bookmarks; see **P.6-9**) for e-Books.
Downloading Free E-Books
In ②, *Free Contents* ➔ ● ➔ *Tada-Hon* or *Tada-Komi* ➔ ●
■ Follow onscreen instructions.

e-Book Viewer

Read XMDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, *e-Book Viewer* ➔ ●
● e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

Digital Media Viewer

Read digital magazines and newspapers. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, *Digital Media Viewer* ➔ ●
● Digital Media Viewer starts. Refer to the Digital Media Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, *BookSurfing* ➔ ●
● BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card
● When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Entertainment

12

Advanced

♨ ●Copying text ●Opening non-940SH e-Books (Library) ●Using Library (**P.12-15**)

Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

● Save and organize members in Groups.
● S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
● Set Connection status to *Online* first.

First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.


```
T.ll ● ⬛            1505 ▥▮▮▮
      Yamada Takako
      私の状況
↑ Online
◉ ごきげん
♟ Answer Status
  Answer OK
  Reply OK
  Join OK
● <Add Comment>

Options Change
```

❶ ● ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ●
➜ *S! Friend's Status* ➜ ●

```
Change My Status
to Online?
    Yes
    No
```

❷ *Yes* ➜ ●

```
A member is not
registered.
Register a member?
    Yes
    No
```

❸ *Yes* ➜ ●

❹ *Phone Book* ➜ ●

❺ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ Select phone number ➜ ●

```
Send a member
registration
request to Ueda
Mikio?
    Yes
    No
```

● Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

❻ *Yes* ➜ ●

● Registration request is sent to the number.

When Request is Accepted
● An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry
In ❹, *Add New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ Enter phone number ➜ ● ➜ ❻

Advanced

● Adding members ● Deleting members ● Moving members ● Renaming Groups ● Rejecting requests ● Updating manually ● Opening notices
● Sending My Details image (And more on **P.12-16** - **12-17**)

Opening Member Status

1 ● ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ●
  ➔ *S! Friend's Status* ➔ ●
  ➔ ⊙ Select Group

— My Status
— Member Status

2 Select member ➔ ●

When Cancellation Notice Arrives
● Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

1 ● ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ ●
  ➔ *S! Friend's Status* ➔ ●
  ➔ 私の状況 ➔ ●

— Connection Status

My Status Window

2 Select Status, e.g., ごきげん ➔ ●
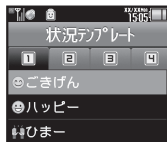
Status Template Window

3 Select new Status ➔ ●

4 Select Availability, e.g., *Answer OK* ➔ ● ➔ Select new Availability ➔ ●

5 *<Add Comment>* ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ●

6 ⓨ ➔ Update starts

Changing Connection Status
  [My Status Window] *Online* (or *Offline*) ➔ ● ➔ Select status ➔ ●
Changing Status Icon/Label
  [Status Template Window] Select Status ➔ ⓨ ➔ *Status Icon* or *Status Label* ➔ ● ➔ Select Pictogram or enter text ➔ ● ➔ ⓨ
Changing Availability Settings at Once
  In 4, *Answer Status* ➔ ● ➔ Select new Answer Status ➔ ● ➔ From 5
Editing My Status Name
  [My Status Window] ✉ ➔ *Edit Name* ➔ ● ➔ Edit ➔ ●

Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.

Accept the registration request from Kondo
Yes
No
ConfirmLater
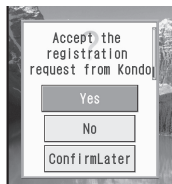
1 *Yes* ➔ ●
● Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting
In ①, *No* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
■ Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
■ For *ConfirmLater*, Information window opens.

Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.

状況テンプレート
① ② ③ ④
ごきげん
ハッピー
ひまー

1 In Status Template window, ⊠ ➔ *New Entry* ➔ ●

2 Enter name ➔ ●

3 *<未定>* ➔ ●

Status Setting
Status Icon
Status Label
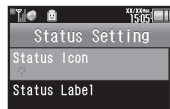
4 *Status Icon* ➔ ● ➔ Select Pictogram ➔ ●

5 *Status Label* ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ● ➔ ⊠

6 Repeat ③ - ⑤ ➔ ⊠ ➔ Saved

Saving to Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ⊙ Select template ➔ ⊠ ➔ *Save to DF* ➔ ● ➔ *Save here* ➔ ●
Loading Templates via Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ⊠ ➔ *Add Template* ➔ ● ➔ Select template ➔ ●
Renaming Templates
[Status Template Window] ⊙ Select template ➔ ⊠ ➔ *Edit Temp. Name* ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●

Advanced
●Resetting templates (**P.12-16**)

Entertainment 12

12-8

Using S! Circle Talk

Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Packet transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ● ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ● ➜ *S! Circle Talk* ➜ ●

- When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and press ●, then skip ahead to ❸.
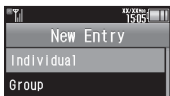
2 *<Add New Entry>* ➜ ●

New Entry
Individual
Group

❸ *Group* ➜ ● ➜ *Group Name:* ➜ ● ➜ Enter name ➜ ●

NewGroup 0 People
Group Name:
Friend
No. 1:

❹ Select number, e.g., *No.1:* ➜ ●

❺ *Phone Book* ➜ ●

❻ Select entry ➜ ● ➜ Select phone number ➜ ●

NewGroup 1 People
Group Name:
Friend
No. 1:
Ueda Mikio
No. 2:

- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
- Repeat ❹ - ❺ to add members.

❼ (Y) ➜ Saved

Saving as Individuals
In ❸, *Individual* ➜ ● ➜ ❺ - ❻
Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List
In ❺, *Members List* ➜ ● ➜ Select member ➜ ● ➜ ❼
- Omit ❼ when *Individual* is selected in ❸.

Entertainment 12

Advanced

Editing individual members Editing Groups (**P.12-17**)

12-9

Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk
requests to members:
(First, set Connection status to *Online*
(**P.12-7**).)

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ●

   S! C/T Member List
   <Add New Entry>
   Friend
   Natsuyama Sora

2. Select member or Group
   ➡ ●

3. ● ➡ Transmission starts
   ● S! Circle Talk starts when request is
   accepted by a receiver.
   ● Loudspeaker activates automatically.

Direct Entry
Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Call
S! Circle Talk* ➡ ● ➡ ●

S! Circle Talk Operations

■ **Speaking**

1. Press and hold [🔊] when
   Press and Hold 🔊 appears
   ➡ You have the floor

   S! Circle Talk   2
   Natsuyama Sora
   Ueda Mikio

   Press and Hold 🔊
   Add

   ● 🔊 *:My Turn* appears when you
   have the floor.

2. Keep holding [🔊] to speak
   ➡ Release [🔊] ➡ Floor is
   released

   ● Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk
● Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset
to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming
calls as needed.
Canceling Loudspeaker
   During S! Circle Talk, ●
■ To reactivate, follow these steps:
   ● ➡ **While message appears,** ●

■ **Exiting S! Circle Talk**

1. [📞] ➡ Connection ends
   ● S! Circle Talk ends automatically
   when there is only one participant
   left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk
   ◎/◎ ➡ **Select most recent S! Circle
   Talk record** ➡ ✉ ➡ *Rejoin Circle
   Talk* ➡ ●
■ Not available when S! Circle Talk has
ended or maximum number of
participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

1. While handset is ringing/
   vibrating, ● ➡ S! Circle
   Talk starts
   ● Alternatively, press [🔊].
   ● S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced
Disabling Loudspeaker Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (**P.12-17**)

12-10

Entertainment 12

Using Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten meters. (Available even when handset is out-of-range.)
Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

Access Restriction

● In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear that may be used to reset the application password.

Sending Near Chat Request

1 ● ➜ *Entertainment* ➜ ●
   ➜ *Near chat* ➜ ●

> Activate
> Bluetooth?
>
> Yes
>
> No

2 *Yes* ➜ ●
   ● Near Chat S! Application starts.
   ● A confirmation appears. Read the message and press ☺ (はい) or ☻ (いいえ).
   ● For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and S! Appli Notification appears.

> Request to
> activate
> ちかチャット
> received from
> Ueda. Activate?
>
> Yes
>
> No

After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears.

1 *Yes* ➜ ●
   ● Near Chat S! Application starts.
   ● A confirmation appears. Read the message and press ☺ (はい) or ☻ (いいえ).
   ● For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Rejecting Request
In 1, *No* ➜ ●

Entertainment

12

12-11

Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

Saving Blog Details

Setup for Posting via Mail

Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●
   ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ●

   Blog Tool
   ① Add New Entry
   ② Add New Entry

   Blog Tool Window

2. *Add New Entry* ➡ ●

   Blog Setting
   Blog Title
   Blog by send Mail
   Refer/Send by Yahoo! …
   Refer/Send by PCSite/…
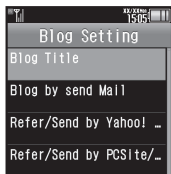
   Blog Setting Menu

3. *Blog Title* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

4. *Blog by send Mail* ➡ ●

   Blog Setting
   Blog's Email Address
   Blog's Title
   Blog's Text
   Picture Size
   M(640x640)

   Blog Setting Menu (Mail)

5. *Blog's Email Address* ➡ ●
   ➡ Enter mail address ➡ ●

6. CLEAR/BACK ➡ Y!

Saving Title/Text for Posts
After 5, *Blog's Title* or *Blog's Text*
➡ ● ➡ Enter title or text ➡ ● ➡ 6
■ Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.

Setting Image Size for Posting
After 5, *Picture Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ● ➡ 6

Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC sites, or both.

1. **In Blog Setting menu, *Refer/ Send by Yahoo! Keitai* or *Refer/Send by PCSite/Direct Browser* ➡ ●**

   Blog Setting
   Blog's URL
   Refer Blog's URL

2. *Blog's URL* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ●

3. *Refer Blog's URL* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ●

4. CLEAR/BACK ➡ Y!

Advanced

⟳ ●Editing entries ●Deleting entries (**P.12-17**)

Posting to Blogs

Complete setup for posting via mail/Internet beforehand.

Posting via Mail

1. **In Blog Tool window, select entry ▶ ●**

2. ***Blog by send Mail* ▶ ●**
   - S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
   - Omit ② if no URL is saved for posting.

3. **Complete message ▶ ⓨ**

Posting via the Internet

1. **In Blog Tool window, select entry ▶ ●**

2. ***Blog by send Browser* ▶ ●**
   - Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
   - Omit ② if no address is saved for posting.
   - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved
After ②, select browser ▶ ●

Opening Blog Page

1. **In Blog Tool window, select entry ▶ ⓨ**
   - Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
   - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved
After ①, select browser ▶ ●

S! Quick News

■ Opening/Updating Items

Updating S! Quick News List automatically	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Automatic Update* → $\odot$ → Select item → $\odot$ → Select interval or choose *On* → $\odot$ ● If a confirmation appears after completing above, press $\odot$. ● When selecting an item set to *Off*, a confirmation appears. ● When Special is set to *On*, items are updated every four hours. ● When General is set to *On*, items are updated once a day. ● Updating items may incur high packet transmission fees. ● Only available in Japan.
Checking update schedule	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Check Schedule* → $\odot$
Deleting S! Quick News items	Start Here $\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News List* → $\odot$ → Select item → $\textcircled{\scriptsize\(\boxtimes\)}$ → See below
	One Entry 一件 → $\odot$ → *Yes* → $\odot$
	All Entries 全件 → $\odot$ → Enter Handset Code → $\odot$ → *Yes* → $\odot$
Resetting S! Quick News List	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Delete S! Quick News Lists* → $\odot$ → Enter Handset Code → $\odot$ → *Yes* → $\odot$ ● Not available during automatic updates.

■ Other

Changing background image	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Change Skin* → $\odot$ → Select pattern → $\odot$
Accessing source sites	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News List* → $\odot$ → Select item → $\odot$ → Select title → $\odot$ → Select linked title → $\odot$ → *Yes* → $\odot$
Disabling image download	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Quick News* → $\odot$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Show Image* → $\odot$ → *Off* → $\odot$

S! Information Channel

■ Receiving Information

Suppressing Information window for new received info	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Information Channel/Weather* → $\odot$ → *Notification* → $\odot$ → *Off* → $\odot$
Requesting re-delivery	$\odot$ → *Entertainment* → $\odot$ → *S! Information Channel/Weather* → $\odot$ → *Get Latest Contents* → $\odot$ → *Yes* → $\odot$

■ Information Pages

Changing Display Size	On a page, $\textcircled{\scriptsize\(\boxtimes\)}$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Display Size* → $\odot$ → Select size → $\odot$
Changing scroll unit	On a page, $\textcircled{\scriptsize\(\boxtimes\)}$ → *Settings* → $\odot$ → *Scroll Unit* → $\odot$ → Select unit → $\odot$

Copying text	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Copy Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Save Items* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● ➡ *Save* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Save here* ➡ ● ● Some files are saved automatically.
Opening page properties	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

■ **Weather Indicators**

Checking weather forecast	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather* ➡ ●
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page, ⊠ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Icon Update* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Suppressing Information window for weather updates	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Information Channel/Weather* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Weather Notif.* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

e-Books

Copying text	In open page, ⊚ ➡ *文字列をコピー* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●
Opening non-940SH e-Books (Library)	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ⊠ ➡ Select file ➡ ● ● Some files may not open.
Using Library	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below **Adding Folders** ⊠ ➡ *New Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Switching Folders** ⊠ ➡ *Switch Folders* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● **Renaming Folders/Files** Select folder/file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● **Moving Files** Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ *Move here* ➡ ● **Deleting Folders/Files** Select folder/file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Opening File Properties** Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●

Entertainment

12

S! Friend's Status

■ Members & Groups

Adding members	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ Select Group ➡ ☺ ➡ *Add Member* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select entry or enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Deleting members	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ Select Group ➡ Select member ➡ ☺ ➡ *Registration Release* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.
Moving members	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ Select Group ➡ Select member ➡ ☺ ➡ *Change Group* ➡ ● ➡ Select target Group ➡ ●
Renaming Groups	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ Select Group ➡ ☺ ➡ *Edit Group Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Rejecting requests	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Request Reply* ➡ ● ➡ See below **Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers** *Confirm if Registered* ➡ ● ● Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically. **Rejecting All Requests** *Always Ignore* ➡ ● ● Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.

■ Status & Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Answer Status* ➡ ● ➡ *User Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ Select Availability ➡ ● ➡ ☺
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Setting* ➡ ● ➡ ☉ Select template ➡ Select Status ➡ ● ➡ *Status Icon* ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ● ➡ *Status Label* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ ☺

■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	Start Here ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ 私の状況 ➡ ● ➡ Select Status ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Template** ☉ Select template ➡ ☺ ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Templates** ☺ ➡ *Reset All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Member Status & Notices

Updating manually	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Update* ➡ ●
Opening notices	● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Status Notif. List* ➡ ● ➡ Select notice ➡ ●

■ **My Details**

Sending My Details image	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Friend's Status* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊙ Select Group ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Send Image* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ● Available when your handset number is saved in Phone Book on member's handset.

S! Circle Talk

■ **Member List**

Editing individual members	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ **See below**
	Replacing Members *Edit* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select method ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⦿
	Deleting Members *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿
Editing Groups	Start Here ⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select Group ➡ ⊠ ➡ **See below**
	Editing Group Name/Members *Edit* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select target ➡ ⦿ ➡ Edit/enter ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊗
	Deleting Group Members *Edit* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select member ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊗
	Deleting Groups *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿

■ **Settings**

Disabling Loudspeaker	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Loudspeaker* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⦿
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ⦿ ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Incoming Calls* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Voice Calls* or *Video Calls* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Accept Calls* ➡ ⦿

Blog Tool

Editing entries	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Edit* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select item ➡ ⦿ ➡ Edit ➡ 🔤 ➡ ⊗ ● For *Blog Title*, omit step of pressing 🔤 after editing.
Deleting entries	⦿ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Blog Tool* ➡ ⦿ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ⦿ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ⦿

Entertainment

12

12-17

S! Friend's Status

❓ Cannot use S! Friend's Status

● Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

❓ Handset rejected a registration request automatically

● Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

❓ Registration request arrived from a deleted member

● Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

❓ Registration request was sent to a member automatically

● Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

❓ Cannot create Status Templates

● Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk

❓ Cannot use S! Circle Talk

● Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

❓ S! Circle Talk starts automatically

● Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

❓ Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

● Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.

Near Chat

❓ Cannot receive Near Chat requests

● S! Appli Request may be set to *Off*.

S! Quick News

❓ Cannot receive content updates

● Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
● Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
● USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.

13

Handset Security

Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed (clamshell closed)
Once	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
At Power On	Lock when handset is powered on; Handset Code entry window opens

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
   Phone/☞ ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●

   Locks
   PIN Entry
   Off
   Function Lock
   Off
   IP Service Setting
   On
   Function Control
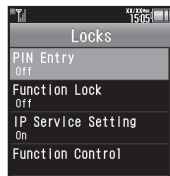
   Locks Menu

2 *Function Lock* ➡ ●

3 Select option ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   Handset Code ➡ ●

Unlocking Temporarily
   **While handset is locked, enter
   Handset Code ➡ ●**
When Function Lock is Active
● Press corresponding key to power
   handset on/off, answer calls, place
   callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry
each time handset is powered on.

1 **In Locks menu, *PIN Entry* ➡
   ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●**

2 *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter PIN ➡ ●

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or
another handset. Secure Remote Lock
disables all operations except powering
handset on, and activates IC Card Lock.
For more about Secure Remote Lock, see
SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**) or
contact SoftBank Mobile Customer
Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

Advanced

🔒 ●Changing PIN ●Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message (**P.13-5**)

Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book	Mail
Calendar/Tasks	Notepad
Yahoo! Keitai	

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*🖃 ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●

   Locks
   PIN Entry
   Off
   Function Lock
   Off
   IP Service Setting
   On
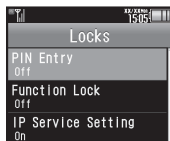
   Locks Menu

2. *Application Lock* ➡ ●

   Application Lock
   ■ Phone Book
   ■ Calendar/Tasks
   ■ Yahoo! Keitai
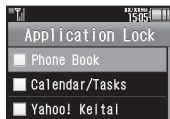
3. Select item ➡ ● (✓)
   For Phone Book, select *No Refer* (to hide entry names in message lists, Call Log, etc.) or *Refer* and press ●.

4. ⊎ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Functions
● When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press ●.

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

1. In Locks menu, *History Lock* ➡ ●

   History Lock
   ■ Call Log
   ■ Sent/Rcvd Msg.

2. Select item ➡ ● (✓)

3. ⊎ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Records
● When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press ●.

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

1. In Locks menu, *Show Secret Data* ➡ ●

2. *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

   Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

1. Enter Handset Code ➡ Shake handset left or right ➡ ●

   ● Show Secret Data is canceled when handset is closed (clamshell closed) or Display goes dark in Standby.

Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	**Attach File**
Infrared	**Wi-Fi**
Bluetooth	**Yahoo! Keitai**
Memory Card	**PC Site Browser**
USB	**IP Service**
Digital TV	**S! Appli**
Messaging	**Osaifu-Keitai**
Voice Call (placing)	**PC Mail**
Video Call (placing)	**Streaming**
USIM (writing)	**Flash®**
S! Mail	**Mobile Widget**

● A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
● May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

■ **When Accessing Restricted Functions**
A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.

Message may not appear for some functions.

Checking Restriction Status

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/☑* ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●

2 *Function Control* ➡ ●
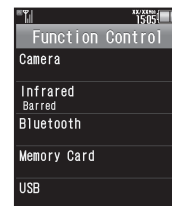
● Restriction status appears for each function.

PIN Entry

Changing PIN	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Phone/*☑ ➡ *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *PIN Entry* ➡ ● ➡ *Change PIN* ➡ ● ➡ Enter current PIN ➡ ● ➡ Enter new PIN ➡ ● ➡ Re-enter new PIN ➡ ● ● Activate PIN Entry first.

Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Phone/*☑ ➡ *Locks* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Lock Message* ➡ ● ➡ **See below** **Saving Message** *Message* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter message ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Checking Message** *Check Message* ➡ ● **Suppressing Message** *Display Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Don't Show* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

14

**Data Folder &
Memory Card**

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ **Preset Folders**

	Contents
Pictures[*]	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to *DCIM*)
Ring Songs·Tones[*]	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli[*]	S! Applications
Widget[*]	Widgets
Music[*]	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos[*]	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli[*]	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books[*]	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen[*]	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Decoration Call[*]	Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

[*]Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Checking Memory Status
- ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Memory Status* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●
- The category *Others:* includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

Opening Files

1 ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ●

Data Folder
Pictures
DCIM
Ring Songs・Tones
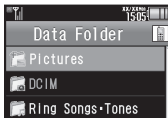
- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press ⓨ.

2 Select folder ➜ ●

To open a sub folder, select it and press ●.

Pictures
XXXXXX_XXXXXX. jpg

My Pict.

MailArt

File List

3 Select file ➜ ●

- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press 🔙.

Handling Open Images
- Press ● to enlarge, or press # / ⊙ or ✳ / ⊙ to open next or previous image. Press ⓨ to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

Attaching to Mail
After **2**, select file ➜ ⊠ ➜ *Send/ Blog* ➜ ● ➜ *As Message* ➜ ●
- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Copy Protected Files (▣ or ✄)
- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 In file list, select file ➜ ⊠

Options
Change to MemoryCard
Move 》
Copy 》
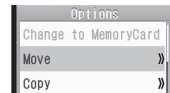
2 *Slide Show* ➜ ●
- Slide Show starts.

3 ● ➜ Slide Show stops

Changing Interval
After **2**, ⊠ ➜ *Speed* ➜ ● ➜ Select speed ➜ ●
- When Speed is set to *Manual*, press ● / # or ✳ to advance or reverse frame.

Note
- Backlight stays on during Slide Show; exit to save battery power.

Data Folder & Memory Card

14

14-3

Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

1. ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ●

```
Pictures
XXXXXX_XXXXXX.jpg

My Pict.

MailArt
```
File List

2. ☺
If *Download* is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to **4**.

3. *Manage Items* ➡ ●

```
Manage Items
Sort
Rename
Create Folder
```
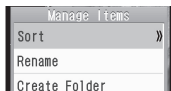
4. *Create Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Moving/Copying Files

Some files may not be moved/copied.

1. In file list, select file ➡ ☺

2. *Move* or *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●
   - For still images, select *Pictures* or *Mail Art* and press ●.

3. Select folder ➡ ●

4. *Move here* or *Copy here* ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Files

1. In file list, ☒

2. Select file ➡ ●
   - Repeat **2** as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with ☑ and press ●.)

Hiding Folders

Restrict access to created folders. Only handset folders can be hidden.

1. In file list, select folder ➡ ☺

2. *Set Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders (Unlock Temporarily)
[File List] ☺ ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Canceling Secret
Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder ➡ ☺ ➡ *Unset Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Advanced

Renaming folders ●Opening file properties ●Renaming files ●Sorting files ●Deleting files & created folders ●Handling SVG files (**P.14-8** - **14-9**)

Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 940SH. Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.17-23** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

Important Memory Card Usage Notes
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/ alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

Inserting & Removing

First, power handset off.

¹ **Open Slot Cover**
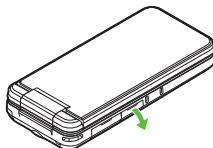
² **Insert card**

- With terminal side down, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

³ **Close cover**
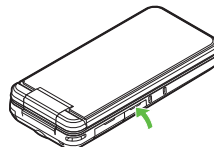
If 📵 Appears after Power On
- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

Removing Memory Card
- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.
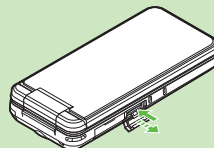
Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1. ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ⊙ *Phone/⤢* ➔ *Memory Card* ➔ ●


```
          15:05
    Memory Card
DPOF
SD Local Contents
Format Card
Memory Status
```
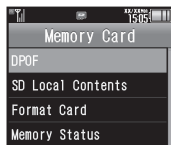
2. *Format Card* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
   - Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3. **Enter Handset Code ➔ ●**


```
   Format Memory
Card? All the data
   in the card will
    be deleted.
       Yes
       No
```

4. *Yes* ➔ ●
   - To cancel, choose *No* and press ●.

Precaution
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

1. ● ➔ *Data Folder* ➔ ●

2. ☺ ➔ *Change to MemoryCard* ➔ ●


```
          15:05
    Data Folder
Pictures
DCIM
Ring Songs・Tones
S! Appli
Widget
```
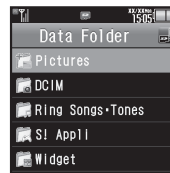
   - Memory Card Data Folder opens.

3. **Select folder ➔ ●**
   To open a sub folder, select it and press ●.

4. **Select file ➔ ●**

Data Folder & Memory Card

14

Advanced

✋ ●Using HTML files on Memory Card (**P.14-9**)

File/Folder View Settings

Switching file list view	(●) ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ (☒) ⇒ *Manage Items* ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Change List View* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select option ⇒ (●)
Changing image quality	(●) ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select file ⇒ (●) ⇒ (☒) ⇒ *Switch Display* (*Picture Quality* for Flash® files) ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select quality ⇒ (●)
Changing transition effect when using (◐)	(●) ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select file ⇒ (●) ⇒ (☒) ⇒ *Switch Effect* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select effect ⇒ (●)
Changing Slide Show settings	**Start Here** (●) ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select file ⇒ (☒) ⇒ *Slide Show* ⇒ (●) ⇒ (☒) ⇒ See below
	Playing Once
	Repeat ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Off* ⇒ (●)
	Playing Music
	BGM Settings ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Switch On/Off* ⇒ (●) ⇒ *On* ⇒ (●)
	Changing Music
	BGM Settings ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Play Ring Tones* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select file ⇒ (●)
	Setting Music to Control Illumination
	Illumination ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Switch On/Off* ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Link to Sound* ⇒ (●) ⇒ (Y)
	Changing Illumination Pattern
	Illumination ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Illumi. Pattern* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select pattern ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select color ⇒ (●) ⇒ (Y)
	● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Slide Show settings	**Start Here** (●) ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select file ⇒ (☒) ⇒ *Slide Show* ⇒ (●) ⇒ (☒) ⇒ See below
	Changing Key Illumination Pattern
	Illumination ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Key Pattern* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select pattern ⇒ (●) ⇒ (Y)
	Disabling Illumination
	Illumination ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Switch On/Off* ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Off* ⇒ (●) ⇒ (Y)
	Hiding Softkeys
	SW Guide Display ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Off* ⇒ (●)
	Setting Backlight to Turn Off after a Period of Time
	Always Backlight ⇒ (●) ⇒ *Off* ⇒ (●)
	● Choosing *Off* applies Display Backlight settings. (Display remains on during Slide Show regardless of Display Saving setting.)
	Changing Image Transition Effect
	Switch ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select effect ⇒ (●)
Showing Softkeys in image view	(●) ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select folder ⇒ (●) ⇒ Select file ⇒ (●) ⇒ (☒) ⇒ *SW Guide Display* ⇒ (●) ⇒ *On* ⇒ (●)

Data Folder & Memory Card

14

14-7

Using Files/Folders

Using files as Wallpaper	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set as Wallpaper* ➡ ● ➡ *Vertical* or *Horizontal* ➡ ● ➡ ● ● For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●.
Using files as ringtones	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set as Ringtone* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●. ● If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.
Using files as ringvideos	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set as Ring Video* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.
Saving Phone Book entries	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Save to Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ ⊙ ● To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Take Picture*, *Record Video* or *Record Voice* ➡ ●

Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ● Assign different names to folders within a layer.
Opening file properties	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Details* ➡ ●
Renaming files	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Sorting files	● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ●
Deleting files & created folders	Start Here ● ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ See below **Single Files** Select file ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **Folder & Files Within** Select folder ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Data Folder & Memory Card

14

Handling SVG files	**Line Scroll** ⊙
	Page Scroll 2 (Up), 8 (Down), 6 (Right), 4 (Left)
	Zoom 1 (Zoom out), 3 (Zoom in)
	Rotate 7 (Counterclockwise), 9 (Clockwise)
	Key Action Mode 0
	Default View 5

Memory Card

| Using HTML files on Memory Card | ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*📇 ➡ *Memory Card* ➡ ● ➡ *SD Local Contents* ➡ ● ➡ Select title ➡ ● |

Managing Files/Folders

? Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)

? Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

? Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 961 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.

? Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, |, ?, ⧵ and " are not supported.

15

Connectivity & File Backup

Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)

940SH supports wireless LAN (hereafter "Wi-Fi") that enables Internet connection via private Wi-Fi network, public wireless LAN service, etc.
Handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible, allowing high-speed communication without switching networks.
Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi.

Service Usage Outline

Private Wi-Fi network	Public wireless LAN service
Prepare devices, contract with ISP, etc.	Subscribe to service, etc.

Register access point on handset
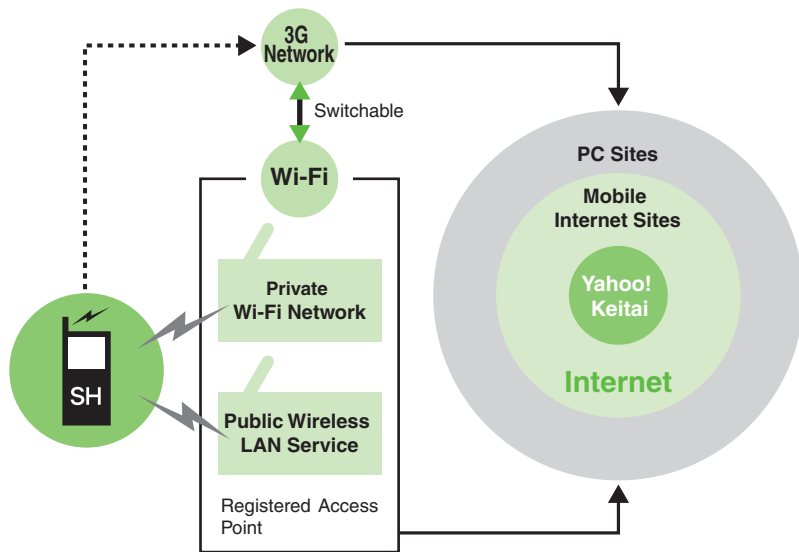
Connected to Wi-Fi within access point range
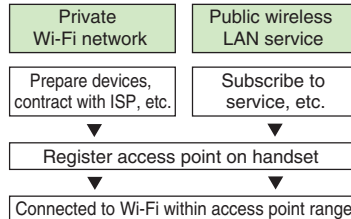
Registering Access Points
● Save access point information to handset to use Wi-Fi.
■ Handset connects to registered access points automatically.
● Access point search may take some time depending on the number of registered access points.

Important Wi-Fi Usage Note
● Depending on signal conditions, connection may automatically switch from Wi-Fi to 3G incurring packet transmission fees; set confirmation to appear as needed.

Connectivity & File Backup

15

Advanced

○Disabling Wi-Fi ○Showing confirmation when switching networks ○Protecting access point information by Handset Code ○Specifying channel range ○Opening access point properties ○Opening Wi-Fi-related handset properties (**P.15-22**)

Registering Private Access Points

- Broadband connection, ISP subscription and Wi-Fi access point are required.
- To connect to corporate access points, consult the system administrator for settings.
- Configure settings on Wi-Fi access points beforehand. (For details, see the access point guide.)
- Access point information (SSID, authentication method, encryption method, security key, etc.) is unique to each access point. Check it beforehand.

Using AOSS™ or WPS

AOSS™ and WPS are systems/standards for easy access point registration and security configuration; available on compatible Wi-Fi access points.

Using AOSS™

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ●

> Wi-Fi
> Switch On/Off
> Create Profile
> Profile List
> Common Settings
> Connect Information
> Show MAC Address

Wi-Fi Menu

2 *Create Profile* ➡ ●
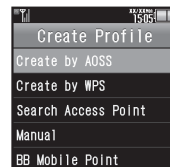
> Create Profile
> Create by AOSS
> Create by WPS
> Search Access Point
> Manual
> BB Mobile Point

Create Profile Menu

- A confirmation appears if no access point is registered. Read the message and press ●.

3 *Create by AOSS* ➡ ●

- If not using Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi, press ✉ before **4**.

4 ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To cancel, press ⓨ.
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi upon completion of registration (Switch On/Off: *On*).

Advanced

🖑 ●Managing registered access points (**P.15-22**)

Using WPS

Example: Push Button Configuration (PBC) method

1 **In Create Profile menu,** *Create by WPS* ➡ ●

- If not using Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser over Wi-Fi, press ✉ before ❷.

2 ●
- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To cancel, press ✐.
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi upon completion of registration (Switch On/Off: *On*).

Using PIN Method
- Enter an eight-digit number (PIN) generated by handset into the access point.
   After ❶, ✐ ➡ *PIN entry* ➡ ● ➡ ●
   ➡ **Enter number on Display into access point** ➡ ●

Access Point Search

1 **In Create Profile menu,** *Search Access Point* ➡ ●

Searched Result
XXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXX

- To cancel, press ✐.

2 **Select access point** ➡ ●

3 **Enter corresponding security key** ➡ ●

4 *Use* or *Not Use* ➡ ●

Not Use
Saved as profile.
On/Off Settings
set to On and
connect?

Yes
No
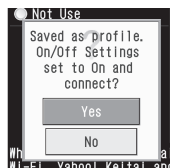
5 *Yes* ➡ ●
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: *On*).

If Encryption Method is WEP
- After ❸, authentication method selection window opens. Select a method according to the access point.

Advanced

✋ ●Setting IP address ●Setting DNS server addresses ●Disabling Wi-Fi when using Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser (**P.15-22** - **15-23**)

Registering Access Points Manually

Check access point information beforehand.

Major Items

■ **Access Point Profile**

Profile Name	Enter a name
SSID	Enter the same SSID as the access point

■ **Security**

Authentication Method	Supported authentication methods vary by access point; set accordingly
Encryption Method	Supported encryption methods vary by authentication method; set according to access point
Security Key	Enter the security key (also called "encryption key," "network key" or "passphrase") set on the access point

Entering Information

Example: Authentication Method is WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK.

1 **In Create Profile menu,**
Manual ➜ ●

Profile Setting
Profile Name
WLAN_00
SSID

Security
Open System
Advanced Settings
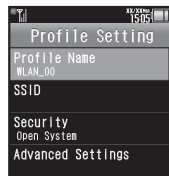
2 *Profile Name* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter name** ➜ ●

3 *SSID* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter SSID** ➜ ●

4 *Security* ➜ ●

Security
Authentication Method
Open System
Encryption Method
WEP
Security Key
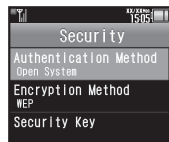
Security Menu

5 *Authentication Method* ➜ ● ➜ **Select method** ➜ ●

6 *Encryption Method* ➜ ● ➜ **Select method** ➜ ●

7 *Security Key* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter security key** ➜ ●

8 (Y) ➜ (Y)

9 *Yes* ➜ ●
● Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: *On*).

If Authentication Method is *Open System* & Encryption Method is *No Authentication*
● Omit security key entry.
If Encryption Method is *WEP*
In 7, *<Empty>* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter WEP key** ➜ ● ➜ (Y) ➜ **From 8**

Using Public Wireless LAN Services

- Subscription with the corresponding service provider, etc. is required.
- Access point information (SSID, authentication method, encryption method, security key, etc.) is unique to each access point. Check it beforehand.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi provides access to BB mobilepoint service. For more about BB mobilepoint, see SOFTBANK TELECOM Website (**P.17-23**).

Using BB mobilepoint

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌
   Connectivity ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ●

2. *Create Profile* ➡ ●

   Create Profile
   Create by AOSS
   Create by WPS
   Search Access Point
   Manual
   BB Mobile Point

   Create Profile Menu

   - A confirmation appears if no access point is registered. Read the message and press ●.

3. *BB Mobile Point* ➡ ●

   WISPr Settings
   Switch On/Off
   On
   User ID
   090XXXXXXX
   Password

4. *Password* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   password ➡ ●

5. ✉

6. *Yes* ➡ ●
   - Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: *On*).

Using Other Public Wireless LAN Services

- Check public wireless LAN service information beforehand.
- **Connection to some public wireless LAN services may not be possible.**

1. In Create Profile menu,
   Manual ➡ ●

2. Complete fields
   - For details, see **P.15-5** "Entering Information."

3. *Advanced Settings* ➡ ● ➡
   WISPr Settings ➡ ●

4. *Use ID* ➡ ● ➡ Enter ID ➡ ●

5. *Password* ➡ ● ➡ Enter
   password ➡ ●

6. *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On*
   ➡ ●

7. ✉ ➡ ✉ ➡ ✉

8. *Yes* ➡ ●
   - Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: *On*).

Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 940SH and compatible devices.
940SH supports IrSimple™ high-speed wireless communications protocol; exchange large image files instantly with compatible mobile phones, printers, etc.

Transferable Files

Phone Book	**Received Msg.**
Calendar	**Sent Messages**
Tasks	**Drafts**
Notepad	**Templates (Messaging)**
Bookmarks	**Data Folder**

● Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
● Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.
● Handset cannot receive connection requests during Software Update.
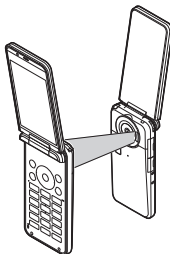
● Do not place objects between devices.
● Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
● Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.
● 940SH complies with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not transfer properly.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
IrSS Transfer	Exchange single image files with compatible devices at high speed

● Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
● Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code
● Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Connectivity & File Backup

15

15-7

Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

1 ⊙ (Long)

- Infrared is activated. (Alternatively, activate it via Main Menu.)
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel Infrared, Long Press ⊙.

2 Connection request arrives
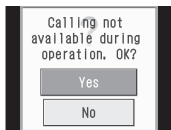
```
Calling not
available during
operation, OK?
    Yes
    No
```
Request Window

3 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press ⊙.

■ Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer
Yes ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press ●.

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)
Yes ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡
● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡
● ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ●

■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)
Yes ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡
● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡
● ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes*
➡ ●
- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

■ IrSS Transfer
Yes ➡ ●
- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

Connectivity & File Backup

15

Advanced

♨ ●Activating Infrared via Main Menu ●Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size (**P.15-23**)

Sending Files

One File Transfer
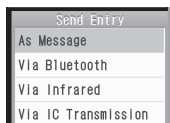
Example: Phone Book entry

1 ⓠ ➜ **Select entry** ➜ ✉ ➜ *Send Entry* ➜ ●

```
        Send Entry
As Message
Via Bluetooth
Via Infrared
Via IC Transmission
```

2 *Via Infrared* ➜ ●

```
    Calling not
available during
operation, OK?
      Yes
      No
```

3 *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **Transfer starts**
  ● When complete, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1 ● ➜ *Tools* ➜ ● ➜ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➜ *Infrared* ➜ ●

2 *Send All* ➜ ●

3 *Yes* ➜ ● ➜ **Enter Handset Code** ➜ ●

```
out        15:05
       Send All
☐ 📖 Phone Book
☐ 📔 Appointments/Ta…
☐ 🌐 Bookmarks
☐ 📋 Notepad
☐ 📨 Received Messag…
```
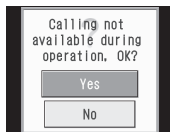
4 **Select item** ➜ ● (☐/✔) ➜ **Complete selection** ➜ ⓨ

5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➜ ● ➜ **Transfer starts** ➜ ●

Sending Phone Book
  ● In 5, Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:
    Yes or *No* ➜ ●

Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

1 ● ➜ *Data Folder* ➜ ●

2 *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➜ ●
  For *DCIM*, select a folder and press ●.

3 **Select image** ➜ ⓨ (Long)

```
   Confirm this
message next time?
      Yes
      No
```

4 *Yes* or *No* ➜ ● ➜ **Transfer starts**
  ● Images may be reduced automatically before transfer depending on the size.
  ● When complete, file list returns.
  ● Transfers are one-way; end even if files are not received.

Connectivity & File Backup

15

Advanced

◑ ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.15-23**)

IC Transmission

Wirelessly transfer files between 940SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

Getting Started

IC Transmission Precautions

Align 🔁 logos of both devices.
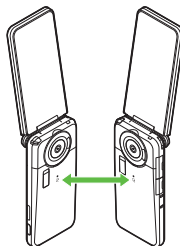
Align 🔁 logos

Keep 🔁 logos aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Advanced

Transferring Files via IC Transmission

Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives

```
Calling not
available during
operation. OK?
    Yes
    No
```
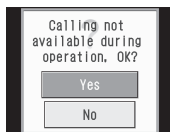
Request Window

● Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

2 Perform subsequent operations

● To cancel transfer, press $\circledY$.

Subsequent Operations

■ **One File Transfer**
$Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

● If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

■ **All File Transfer (Adding Files)**
$Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ Enter Handset Code $\rightarrow$
$\textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ Enter Authorization Code $\rightarrow$
$\textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ *As New Items* $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

■ **All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)**
$Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ Enter Handset Code $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$
$\rightarrow$ Enter Authorization Code $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$
Delete All & Save $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

● For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 $\textcircled{\scriptsize Q} \rightarrow$ Select entry $\rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize \boxtimes} \rightarrow$ *Send Entry* $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

```
      Send Entry
As Message
Via Bluetooth
Via Infrared
Via IC Transmission
```

2 *Via IC Transmission* $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

```
Calling not
available during
operation. OK?
    Yes
    No
```
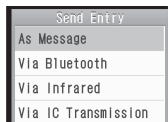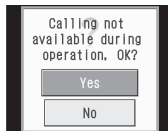
3 $Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ Transfer starts

All File Transfer

1 $\textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textcircled{\odot}$ *Connectivity* $\rightarrow$ *IC Transmission* $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

```
       IC Transmission
1 File Reception

Send All
```

IC Transmission Menu

2 *Send All* $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

3 $Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ Enter Handset Code $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

4 Select item $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} (\square/\checkmark) \rightarrow$ Complete selection $\rightarrow \textcircled{\scriptsize Y}$

5 Enter Authorization Code $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow$ Transfer starts $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

Sending Phone Book
● In **5**, Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:
Yes or *No* $\rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$

Advanced

○ ●Sending My Details ●Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.15-23**)

Connectivity & File Backup

15

15-11

Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between
940SH and compatible devices (watches,
handsfree devices, etc.).
● For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
● 940SH supports simultaneous connection
with two devices. (May be unavailable
depending on the device type.)
● Bluetooth® connection may not be possible
with some Bluetooth® devices.
■ Handset shall be connected to certified
Bluetooth® devices that meet the
specification standards developed by
Bluetooth SIG.
■ Data transfers may fail depending on
characteristics or specifications of the
certified Bluetooth® devices.
■ Noise may interfere with wireless or
handsfree conversations.
● TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T
DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Precautions

Check transmission range of your Bluetooth®
device to use with handset properly.
Maximum transmission range for transfers
between 940SH handsets is ten meters.
(Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may
vary depending on conditions.)

Important Handsfree Device Usage Note
● Handle call operations on the device in
use.
Bluetooth® Watches
● Compatible Bluetooth® watches support
these functions:
■ Time Correction   ■ Alarm Notice
■ News Notice   ■ Mail Notice
■ Remote Shutter   ■ Mode Settings
■ Quick Silent   ■ Caller ID Notice
■ Hold Calls   ■ Operator Notice
● For details about functions/operations,
see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

Bluetooth® Connection

Sender	Recipient
Search for devices	→
Select device	←	Activate Bluetooth®
▼	
Request connection (Enter Authorization Code)	→
	▼
	Accept
	▼
	Enter Authorization Code
	▼
Connection complete	
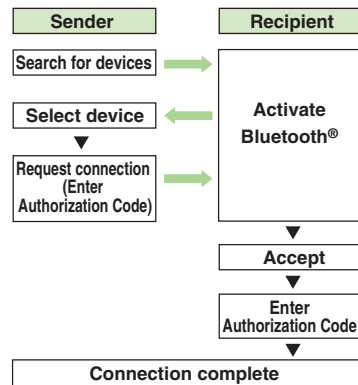
Authorization Code
● 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth®
connections. Pairing possible when
codes match.
● For handsfree devices, enter specified
Authorization Code.
● Authorization Code entry may not be
required depending on the other device.

Advanced

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled Switching audio output to wireless device Changing Bluetooth® name for handset Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties (And more on **P.15-23** - **15-24**)
Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (**P.15-24**)

Connectivity & File Backup

15

15-12

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Activating Bluetooth®

1 ☉ (Long)

- Bluetooth® is activated.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.
- To cancel Bluetooth®, Long Press ☉.

Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

Device Search & Pairing

Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ☉
Connectivity ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ●

    Bluetooth
    Switch On/Off
    Add Device
    Paired Devices
    Send All
    Setting Watch

Bluetooth Menu

2 *Add Device* ➡ ●

    Set the other
    Bluetooth device
    ready for paring.
    See the device
    manual for the
    procedure.
    ☑ Show next time.

- To disable confirmation, press ✉ before **3**.

3 ●

- Found devices are listed after search.
- To cancel search, press ✎.

4 Select device ➡ ●

If a confirmation appears, choose *Yes* and press ●.

5 Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device ➡ ● ➡ Pairing complete

- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Connecting Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1 Compliant Devices
  In **5**, *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Pairing complete**
■ If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.

Advanced

🖋 ●Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu ●Editing Paired Device list ●Disconnecting devices ●Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service ●Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (**P.15-24**)

Connectivity & File Backup

15

15-13

Connecting Paired Devices

1 **In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➤ ●**

All Paired Devices
XXXXX Connect
XXXXX unused

Paired Device List

2 **Select device ➤ ●**

If handset is already connected to another device, disconnection confirmation may appear; choose *Yes* and press ●.

● The device is connected and ✓ (preferred) appears.

Accepting Connection Requests

Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

1 **Connection request arrives**

XXXXX
Add to my devices?
Yes
No

Request Window

2 **Yes ➤ ●**

Enter passkey

Enter the same number as the target device.

3 **Enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➤ ●**

● Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

Connecting Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1 Compliant Devices
In 3, *Yes* ➤ ●
■ If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.

Transferring Files

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

● For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
● When requested, enter Authorization Code.

Receiving Files

1 **Connection request arrives**
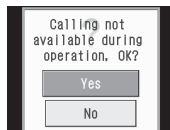
> Calling not
> available during
> operation, OK?
>
> Yes
> No

2 **Perform subsequent operations**

● To cancel transfer, press Ⓨ.

■ **Subsequent Operations**
● **One File Transfer**
Yes ➡ ◉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ◉
● If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press ◉.
● **All File Transfer (Adding Files)**
Yes ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ *As New Items* ➡ ◉
● **All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)**
Yes ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ◉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ◉

Sending Files

■ **One File Transfer**
Example: Phone Book entry

1 ⓠ ➡ Select entry ➡ ⓒ ➡ *Send Entry* ➡ ◉

> Send Entry
> As Message
> Via Bluetooth
> Via Infrared
> Via IC Transmission
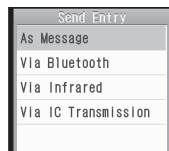
2 *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ◉

3 Select device ➡ ◉

4 *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ **Transfer starts**
● When complete, entry search window returns.

■ **All File Transfer**

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Send All* ➡ ◉

2 Select device ➡ ◉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ◉

3 Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉

> Send All
> ☐ 📖 Phone Book
> ☐ 📅 Appointments/Ta…
> ☐ 📑 Bookmarks
> ☐ 📝 Notepad
> ☐ ✉ Received Messag…
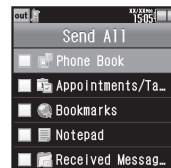
4 Select item ➡ ◉ (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ Ⓨ ➡ Transfer starts ➡ ◉

Sending Phone Book
● In ④, Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:
Yes or *No* ➡ ◉

Advanced

Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder

Connecting PC

Accessing Memory Card

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset.
USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1. **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

2. *Mass Storage* ➡ ●

   [USB Mode]
   Modem/Data
   Mass Storage
   Recorder Link
   MTP Mode
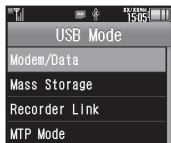
   ● Use PC to access Memory Card.

3. Ⓨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡
   Connection ends

   ● Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in ❶ Does Not Appear
● Follow these steps:
  ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Connectivity*
  ➡ *USB Mode* ➡ ● ➡ From ❷
■ Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.
Utility Software
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/

Mobile Data Communication Fees
● Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

Connecting Blu-ray Disc Recorder

Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable to transfer recorded programs to Memory Card without removing card from handset.
● Compatible only with SHARP Blu-ray Disc recorders. For details, see **P.17-23** "Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders."
● USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1. **Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable**

   [USB Mode]
   Modem/Data
   Mass Storage
   Recorder Link
   MTP Mode
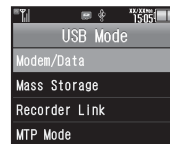
2. *Recorder Link* ➡ ●

   ● Transfer files from Blu-ray Disc recorder to Memory Card.

3. Ⓨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡
   Connection ends

   ● Open transferred files via Recorder Contents in TV menu or Media Player menu (Videos).

If Menu in ❶ Does Not Appear
● Follow these steps:
  ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ◌ *Connectivity*
  ➡ *USB Mode* ➡ ● ➡ From ❷
■ Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once.

Items with * are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Sent Messages*
Calendar*	Drafts*
Tasks*	Templates (Messaging)
Bookmarks*	Contents Keys
Notepad*	Data Folder
Mail Groups*	User Dictionary
Received Msg.*	

Precautions

● Not available if battery is low.
● Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Transferring All Items
● Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Contents Keys
● Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.

Backup & Restore

Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*☐ ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ●

Backup/Restore Menu

2 *Backup Selected Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

3 *Yes* ➡ ●

4 Select item ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ Complete selection
 ● For *Phone Book*, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No* and press ●.

5 ⓨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
 ● To cancel, press ⓨ.

6 Backup complete ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
 In 4, ⊠ ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From 5

Selecting/Canceling All Items
 In 4, ⊠ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:
(Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current--with the exception of Contents Keys--handset content.)

1 In Backup/Restore menu, *Restore Selected Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

2 *Yes* ➡ ●

3 Select item ➡ ● (☐/✓) ➡ Complete selection

4 ⓨ
 ● If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

5 Select file ➡ ●
 ● Repeat 5 to complete selection.

6 ⓨ

7 *Yes* ➡ ●
 ● To cancel, press ⓨ.

8 Restore complete ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
 In 3, ⊠ ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From 4

Selecting/Canceling All Items
 In 3, ⊠ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Changing Restoration Method
 After 3, select item ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Change to Add Mode* or *Chg. to Overwrite Mode* ➡ ● ➡ From 4

Advanced

⅃ ●Backing up all items ●Encoding data for backup ●Restoring all items ●Deleting backup files (**P.15-25**)

Connectivity & File Backup

15

15-18

About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.

Phone Book — Synchronize — Server

Edit on PC — Import from/Export to PC
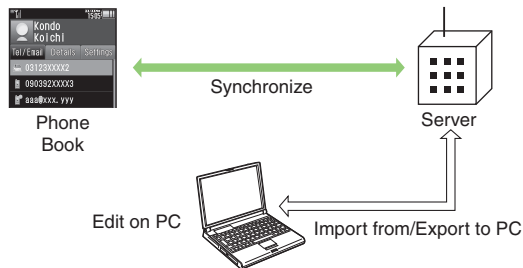
● SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
● Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (**P.15-20**).
● Use a PC to edit SAB online.
● For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-23**).
● Synchronization incurs packet transmission fees.

Auto Synchronization
● When subscribed to SAB, Network Information retrieval activates auto synchronization (Auto Sync Settings: *On*, Set Frequency: *After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)*, Sync Mode Setting: *Normal*); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
● Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Synchronization	Normal	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB[1]
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB[2]
	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB[3]
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book[4]
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book[5]
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
	Sync Lock	Prevent synchronization from handset
Send Notice[6]	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification[7]	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification[8]	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	Tomodachi Email Filter[9]	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

[1] If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.
[2] Unrelated SAB changes remain.
[3] Any existing SAB content is deleted.
[4] Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.
[5] Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.
[6] Access this function via handset (My SoftBank; Japanese) or a PC.
[7] Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.
[8] Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.
[9] Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese).

↓

Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.
● User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.

↓

Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ **Unsynchronizable Items**
These Phone Book settings are lost:
■ Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration, Illumination

■ **Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion**
● When no Phone Book content exists, performing synchronization via *Normal*, *Sync from Client* or *Backup* deletes all SAB content.
● When no SAB content exists, performing synchronization via *Normal*, *Sync from Server* or *Restore* deletes all Phone Book content.

■ **Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities**
When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ **Contract Termination**
SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ **SAB Transfers to New Handsets**
● **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
● **Other 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
● **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ **When Double Number is Active**
Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

Advanced

🔧 ●Canceling auto synchronization (**P.15-25**)

Using Sync Commands

Normal (Start Sync)

Synchronize Phone Book and SAB via Normal.

1. ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ●
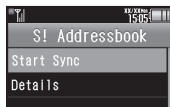
   ```
   [THEME 15:05]
   S! Addressbook
   Start Sync
   Details
   ```
   S! Addressbook Menu

2. *Start Sync* ➡ ●
   - Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

3. ● ➡ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization
ⓨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Other Sync Commands

Available Commands:

Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB; any existing SAB content is deleted
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book
Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book; any existing Phone Book content is deleted

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), synchronization is performed via Normal regardless of selection.

1. **In S! Addressbook menu, *Details* ➡ ●**

2. *Backup/Restore* ➡ ●

3. **Select command ➡ ●**
   - Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

4. ● ➡ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization
ⓨ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Connectivity & File Backup

15

Advanced

15-21

Wi-Fi

■ General

Disabling Wi-Fi	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ● Set to *Off* when not using Wi-Fi to extend Battery Time.
Showing confirmation when switching networks	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Common Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch Notification* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch from 3G to Wi-Fi* or *Switch from Wi-Fi to 3G* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Protecting access point information by Handset Code	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Common Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Handset Code Lock Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Specifying channel range	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Common Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Channel Range* ➡ ● ➡ Select range ➡ ● ● In some countries, there are restrictions on available channels. Select channel range accordingly while outside Japan.
Opening access point properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Connect Information* ➡ ●
Opening Wi-Fi-related handset properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Show MAC Address* ➡ ●

■ Managing Access Points

Managing registered access points	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Profile List* ➡ ● ➡ Select access point ➡ ✉ ➡ See below
	Changing Priority *Change Priority* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ●
	Editing *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Complete fields ➡ ⓨ
	Deleting *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ Advanced Settings
When finished with Advanced Settings, complete other fields to register an access point.

Setting IP address	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ 🕓 *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Profile* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *IP Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *IP Address* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Entering IP Address *IP Address* ➡ ● ➡ Enter numbers ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
	Entering Subnet Mask *Subnet Mask* ➡ ● ➡ Enter numbers ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ
	Entering Default Gateway *Default Gateway* ➡ ● ➡ Enter numbers ➡ ● ➡ ⓨ

Setting DNS server addresses	Start Here ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Profile* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *IP Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *DNS Server Address* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	Entering Primary DNS *Primary DNS* ➡ ● ➡ Enter numbers ➡ ● ➡ ⊻
	Entering Secondary DNS *Secondary DNS* ➡ ● ➡ Enter numbers ➡ ● ➡ ⊻
Disabling Wi-Fi when using Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Wi-Fi* ➡ ● ➡ *Create Profile* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Advanced Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai Use Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Not Use* ➡ ● ➡ ⊻

Infrared

Activating Infrared via Main Menu	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On(3 min.)* ➡ ●
Sending My Details	● ➡ 0 ⁰⁻ʷ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/Blog*) ➡ ● ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ *IrSS Key Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Send via IrSS* ➡ ●

IC Transmission

Disabling one file reception	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *IC Transmission* ➡ ● ➡ *1 File Reception* ➡ ● ➡ *Off(Disabled)* ➡ ●
Sending My Details	● ➡ 0 ⁰⁻ʷ ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Via IC Transmission* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/Blog*) ➡ ● ➡ *Via IC Transmission* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

Bluetooth®

■ General

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Visibility* ➡ ● ➡ *Hide My Phone* ➡ ●
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Timeout* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⏶ *Sound Output* ➡ ● ➡ *Bluetooth Device* ➡ ● ● *Bluetooth Device* is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Device Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
Talking on handsfree device	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree Mode* ➡ ●

Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli Request* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Receiving connection requests while connected to a device	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Plural Connect Standby* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *My Device Details* ➡ ● ● Press ⊙ to view service details.
Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

■ **Bluetooth® Watches**

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Setting Watch* ➡ ● ➡ *Set BT-Watch Time* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Setting Watch* ➡ ● ➡ *Notification* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Permit* or *Prohibit* ➡ ● ● Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.

■ **Paired Devices**

Editing Paired Device list	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ⊠ ➡ See below
	Renaming Paired Devices *Change Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
	Deleting Paired Devices *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ● To delete a device connected to handset, choose *Yes* and press ●.
Disconnecting devices	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select connected device ➡ ●
Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Select Service* ➡ ● ➡ *Handsfree function* or *Audio function* ➡ ●
Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection	[Start Here] ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ *Paired Devices* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ⊠ ➡ *Set to Prior Connect* ➡ ● ➡ See below
	For Handsfree Telephony *Handsfree On* ➡ ● ● For *Handsfree On*, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls.
	For Audio Output *Audio On* ➡ ● ● For *Audio On*, Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when ⊛Sound Output is set to *Bluetooth Device*.

■ Sending Files

Sending My Details	● ➡ 0 ➡ ☺ ➡ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file ➡ ☺ ➡ *Send* (or *Send/Blog*) ➡ ● ➡ *Via Bluetooth* ➡ ● ➡ Select device ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

Backup

■ Backup & Restore

Backing up all items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Phone/*🔲 ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Backup All Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Backup complete ➡ ● ➡ ●
Encoding data for backup	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Phone/*🔲 ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *Encode Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.
Restoring all items	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Phone/*🔲 ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Restore All Items* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Restore complete ➡ ● ➡ ●

■ Backup Files

Deleting backup files	● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ *Phone/*🔲 ➡ *Backup/Restore* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ● ➡ *File Management* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ● (/ ✓) ➡ Complete selection ➡ ☺ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

S! Addressbook Back-up

Canceling auto synchronization	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Sync Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Set On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Changing auto synchronization settings	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Sync Settings* ➡ ● ➡ See below ● Set *Set On/Off* to *On* beforehand. **Changing Auto Sync Frequency** *Set Frequency* ➡ ● ➡ Select frequency ➡ ● ➡ Enter/select date/time/day of the week ➡ ● ● For *After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)*, omit steps for date, time, etc. **Changing Auto Sync Command** *Sync Mode Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select command ➡ ●
Confirming password	☺ ➡ メニューリスト ➡ ● ➡ *My SoftBank* ➡ ● ➡ *English* ➡ ● ➡ *Password confirmation for S! Address Book* ➡ ● ● Follow onscreen instructions.
Opening log	● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Sync Log* ➡ ● ➡ Select record ➡ ●
Deleting log records	Start Here ● ➡ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Addressbook Back-up* ➡ ● ➡ *Details* ➡ ● ➡ *Sync Log* ➡ ● ➡ See below **One Record** Select record ➡ ☺ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● **All Records** ☺ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Wi-Fi

❓ Wi-Fi disconnects

- Connection is interrupted automatically if Display goes dark after a period of inactivity; restored when Display reactivates.

❓ Cannot connect to Wi-Fi

- Depending on access point settings, handset may not connect to Wi-Fi when powered on outside 3G range. In this case, pass through the 3G service area carrying the handset and retry.

❓ Login page opens when using public wireless LAN service

- Some public wireless LAN services require authentication via Direct Browser. Enter corresponding user ID/password.

File Transfer

❓ Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

❓ Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is *On*

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

❓ Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Category, Tone/Video, Illumination, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

❓ Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

❓ Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

❓ Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Documents folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

❓ Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

❓ Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

Infrared

? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.

Backup & Restore

? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser/Direct Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.

16

**Handset
Customization**

✗ **Date & Time Settings**

Date & Time	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Date & Time* ➡ ●
Setting the date and time	*Set Date/Time* ➡ ● ➡ Enter the year ➡ Enter the month ➡ Enter the day ➡ Enter the time ➡ ●
Correcting Clock manually	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Disabling auto Clock correction	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Corr. Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Setting auto Clock correction timing	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Corr. Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ☺ ➡ Select item ➡ ● (□ / ✓) ➡ ☿ ➡ 🔲
Activating Daylight Saving	*Daylight Saving* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Changing Time Zone	*Set Time Zone* ➡ ● ➡ �she Select area ➡ ●
Adding custom time zone	*Set Time Zone* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ Enter city name ➡ ● ➡ (♪) + or - ➡ ☉ ➡ Enter time difference ➡ ●
Changing time format to 12 hour	*Time Format* ➡ ● ➡ *12 Hour* ➡ ●
Changing date format	*Date Format* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	*Calendar Format* ➡ ● ➡ *Monday-Sunday* ➡ ●

✗ Display & Illumination Settings **1**

Language

Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ Sound/Display menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English	*Language* or *言語選択* ➔ ● ➔ *English* or *日本語* ➔ ●

Image & Text

Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➔ ●

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ *Preset Animation* (or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 3*) ➔ ●
Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select image ➔ ● ➔ Specify image area ➔ ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.
Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.	*System Graphics* ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ *Customized Screen* ➔ ● ➔ ● ● Not available for *Power On* or *Power Off*.
Selecting image enhancement option for Standby and video playback	*Vivid Mode* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Changing font of numbers entered in Standby	*Dial Number* ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ●
Showing a message each time handset is powered on	*Greeting Message* ➔ ● ➔ *Edit Message* ➔ ● ➔ Enter message ➔ ● ➔ *Switch On/Off* ➔ ● ➔ *On* ➔ ●
Hiding caller info in Viewer position	*Caller Display* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ●

Display & Backlight

Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➔ ●

Disabling display transition effects	*Display Effects* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ●
Changing Display/key Backlight illumination time	*Backlight* ➔ ● ➔ *Time Out* ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ●
Changing Display Brightness	*Backlight* ➔ ● ➔ *Brightness* ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Canceling/activating Light Sensor	*Backlight* ➔ ● ➔ *Brightness* ➔ ● ➔ ☺ (/✓) ➔ ●
Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off	*Display Saving* ➔ ● ➔ Select period ➔ ●

Handset Customization

16

⚙ **Display & Illumination Settings 2**

Standby Display	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Display* ➡ ●
Changing Clock/Calendar	*Clock/Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	*Show Operator Name* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Selecting Mobile Widget display option	*Show Widget* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Hiding Pedometer in Standby	*Pedometer* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Collective Illumination	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●
Changing *Separate* illumination patterns at once	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Collective* ➡ ● ➡ Select theme ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

Key Backlight	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/*🖂
Disabling key Backlight illumination	*Set Key Light* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Effect Illumination	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●
Setting illumination pattern by action	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select action ➡ ● ➡ *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
Setting Key Illumination pattern by action	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select action ➡ ● ➡ *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ●
Disabling illumination by action	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select action ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Keeping Illumination Light on during calls	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Effect Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Calling* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Always On* ➡ ●

Handset Customization

16

16-4

♪ Incoming Transmission Settings

Handset Response	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ●
Changing ringtone volume	*Volume* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Adjust level ➡ ●
Selecting illumination option	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Event Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On*, *Link to Sound* or *Off* ➡ ●
Changing Illumination Light patterns	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Event Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
Changing Key Illumination patterns	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Event Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ *Key Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ● Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to *Link to Sound*.
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed transmissions	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* or *Off* ➡ ●
Setting illumination pattern for missed transmissions	*Set Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ *Separate* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Illumination* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ *Illumi. Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ Select color ➡ ● ● Light color is unselectable for some patterns. ● After Information window opens, Illumination Light flashes for up to 24 hours, then goes out (to save battery power).
Answering calls with other keys	*Any Key Answer* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ● ● Use 0 - 9, ✳, #, ⁂, ⟳, 🄿 or 🄺 in addition to 📞.
Muting ringer with other keys	*Any Key Answer* ➡ ● ➡ *Only Mute* ➡ ● ● Use 0 - 9, ✳, #, ⁂, ⟳, 🄿 or 🄺 in addition to ⌨.

♪ Sound Settings

System Sounds	Start Here ⊙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⊙ ➡ In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ⊙
Enabling Keypad Tones	*System Sounds* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Keypad Tones* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select tone ➡ ⊙
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	*System Sounds* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *S! Circle Talk* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select tone ➡ ⊙
Changing other System Sounds	*System Sounds* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select item ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Tone* or *Sound* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select folder ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select tone/file ➡ ⊙ ● For files with limited usage period, choose *Yes* and press ⊙.
Disabling System Sounds	*System Sounds* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select item ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Tone* or *Sound* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Off* ➡ ⊙ ● Not available for *S! Circle Talk*.
Changing System Sound duration	*System Sounds* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select item ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Duration* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Select/enter time ➡ ⊙ ● Not available for *Keypad Tones* or *S! Circle Talk*.
Changing System Sound volume	*Volume* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *General Volume* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Adjust level ➡ ⊙

Additional Sound Settings	Start Here ⊙ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ⊙ ➡ Sound/Display menu
Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	*Ringer Output* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Earphone* ➡ ⊙
Activating Speaker surround	*Sounds & Alerts* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *Surround* ➡ ⊙ ➡ *On* ➡ ⊙

Handset Customization

16

✗ Connectivity Settings

Network	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Network*
Selecting a Network manually	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Adding preferred Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ Select target location ➡ ● ➡ *Insert* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Adding preferred Networks to the end	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ *Add to End* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ●
Deleting preferred Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Preferred* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Adding Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add* ➡ ● ➡ Enter country code ➡ ● ➡ Enter Network code ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ *Select NW Type* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ● After selecting *Add New Network* and pressing ●, Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press ● again and proceed.
Editing Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Network* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Change* ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as adding Networks ➡ ●
Deleting Networks	*Select Network* ➡ ● ➡ *Add New Network* ➡ ● ➡ Select Network ➡ ● ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●
Switching Network service between 3G and GSM manually	*Select Service* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ Select service ➡ ●
Refreshing Network connection	*Re-search Signal* ➡ ●
Retrieving Network Information	*Retrieve NW Info* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Checking Network status	*Network Info* ➡ ●
Editing connection names for mobile data communication	*External Device* ➡ ● ➡ Select name ➡ ● ➡ *Edit* ➡ ●
Clearing connection names for mobile data communication	*External Device* ➡ ● ➡ ☺ ➡ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

IP Service	Start Here ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/🖂* ➡ *Locks* ➡ ●
Disabling IP Service	*IP Service Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ● When *Off*, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting are disabled.

Handset Customization

16

🔧 Reset Settings

Restoring Default Settings	Start Here ⦿ ➧ *Settings* ➧ ⦿ ➧ ⦿ *Phone/🖳* ➧ *Master Reset* ➧ ⦿

Restoring default handset settings	*Reset Settings* ➧ ⦿ ➧ Enter Administrator Code ➧ ⦿ ➧ *Yes* ➧ ⦿ ➧ *Yes* ➧ ⦿ ● Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	*Reset All* ➧ ⦿ ➧ Enter Administrator Code ➧ ⦿ ➧ *Yes* ➧ ⦿ ➧ *Yes* ➧ ⦿ ● Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) ● Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications. ● Handset Code and Administrator Code return to the default settings.

● A confirmation may appear before entering Administrator Code; end the current function to proceed.
● When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.

17

Appendix

About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions
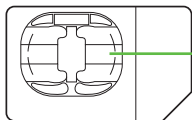
IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Clean with soft dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

USIM PIN

4-digit code (*9999* by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict usage.

PUK Lock
- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock
- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:
  Enter PUK Code ➡ ⦿ ➡ Enter new PIN ➡ ⦿ ➡ Re-enter new PIN ➡ ⦿
  ■ Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**) for recovery.

USIM Card Installation

● Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
● USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

1. **Remove battery (P.17-4)**

2. **Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks**

Tray

Tab
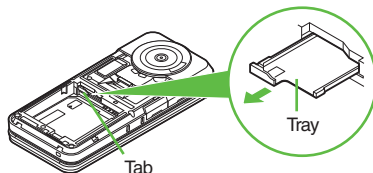
3. **Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up**

Notch
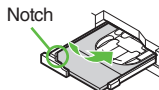
4. **Push in Tray fully**

● Reinstall battery (**P.17-4**).

Removing

1. **Remove battery**

2. **Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks**

Tab
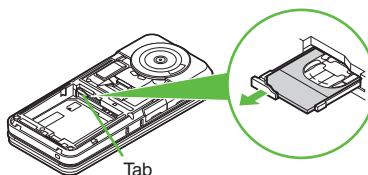
3. **Lift and slide out USIM Card as shown**
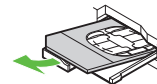
● Reinstall battery.
● Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement
● Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing® and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

Appendix

17

17-3

Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Lithium-ion Battery
- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

  Li-ion00

  ■ To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
  ■ To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

Inserting & Removing

1 Remove cover
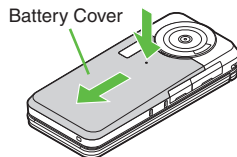
Battery Cover

- Press and slide as shown.

2 Insert battery
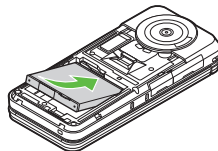
- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

3 Close cover
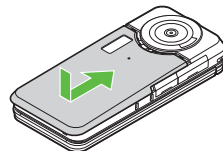
- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing
- Power handset off and lift battery as shown.
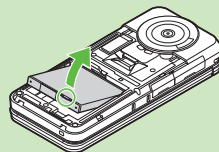
Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank Mobile cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

- Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).
- Touch Panel operations may be unavailable during updates; use handset keys.

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Phone/▣* ➡ *Software Update* ➡ ●

2. *Software Update* ➡ ●

   Software Update
   Update software in a
   place where signal
   conditions are
   strong/stable. All
   incoming and outgoing
   signals will be disabled
   for the duration of this
   update.
   Continue?
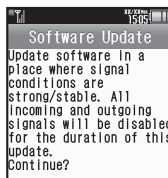
   - Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting Update Period (Japanese)
   In ②, *Update Period* ➡ ●
   ■ Follow onscreen instructions.
Update Result
   In ②, *Update Result* ➡ ●

Scheduled Update

A confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press ● or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.
After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result
   While Information window appears,
   Update Result ➡ ●
Reboot Failure
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, power handset off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.17-42**).

Appendix

17

17-5

Troubleshooting

■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't power on	Was 🔘 pressed long enough?	Press 🔘 longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.17-4**).
Handset won't respond	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry *On*?	If *On*, PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
***Insert USIM Card* appears**	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Power handset off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with dry cloth and re-insert.
***REFRESH* appears and handset returns to Standby**	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active (🔓 appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (**P.2-19**).
	Function Lock may be active (🔒 appears).	Cancel Function Lock (**P.13-2**).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (**P.13-3**).
Handset/AC Charger feels warm	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 940SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Clock settings are lost	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.

■ **Charger/Battery**

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Illumination Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.17-4**).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, S! Application, Media Player and camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.

Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお / ぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオ / アィゥェォ	@./_-1 ␣ (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
✳	゛゜	゛゜-[1]	————	＋P (pause) ? -[2]	————
	Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List[3]				
#	、。↵ (line break) ？！␣ (space)	,.↵ (line break) ?!␣ (space)	#		

[1] - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.
[2] Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.
[3] May not be enterable in some windows.

Appendix 17

17-8

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
⌨	Conversion[4]	Cursor up/down; ↵ (line break) when ⌨ is pressed at the end of text			
⌨	Cursor left/right				
⌨	Switch entry modes (except during conversion)				
	Search Word[5]				
⌨ (Long)	Toggle Personal Mode[5]	————	Toggle Personal Mode[5,6]	————	
⌨	Toggle case (for some characters)				
	————	————	Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)	————	
⌨	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	————	Cancel conversion[6]	————	Delete code
⌨ (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
⌨	Recover characters deleted with ⌨				
	Re-convert[7]	————	Re-convert[6, 7]	————	
⏺	OK				
⌨	Non-Predictive suggestions[5]				
⌨	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion[5]				
⌨ (Long)	Single Kanji Conversion[5]				

[4] Cursor moves up/down except during conversion.

[5] Available during conversion.

[6] Available only in single-byte alphanumeric entry.

[7] Press ⌨ immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.

Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press ⓡ to switch immediately after character entry.

■ **Double-byte Upper Case**

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	―	／
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎	*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	＊	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

■ **Single-byte Upper Case**

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		☎	*1
	8	ﾔ	(	ﾕ	)	ﾖ	＊	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	ﾞ	ﾟ	6	7	8	9	0

■ **Double-byte Lower Case**

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ゃ		ゅ		ょ					*2
	9										
	0				、	。					

■ **Single-byte Lower Case**

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ｧ	ｨ	ｩ	ｪ	ｫ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ｬ		ｭ		ｮ					*2
	9										
	0				､	｡					

*1 Press 7 0 to insert ↵ (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.
*2 Press 8 0 to toggle upper and lower case modes.

Character Code List

Character code table

Block 1

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	Space	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？	
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	∥	｜	…	‥	'	'
014	"	"	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	¢	£	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒	
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026			∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪
027	≫	√	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬			
028					Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†
029	‡	¶					◯			
031							0	1	2	3
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				
033				A	B	C	D	E	F	G
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	
036						a	b	c	d	e
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y
039	z									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ

Block 2

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								

Block 3

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ	㍉	㌔	㌢	㍍	㌘	㌧	㌃	㌶	㍑
134	㍗	㌍	㌦	㌣	㌫	㍊	㌻	㎜	㎝	
135	㎞	㎎	㎏	㏄	㎡					
136				㍻	〝	〟	№	㏍	℡	㊤
137	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽	㍼	
138	≒	≡	∫	∮	∑	√	⊥	∠	∟	⊿
139	∵	∩	∪							
あ										
160		亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏	以 *(い)*	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170	院	陰	隠	韻	吋		右 *(う)*	宇	烏	羽

Block 4

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲	荏 *(え)*	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩	於 *(お)*	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音	下 *(か)*	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200		粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					

―――き―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	

―――く―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
230		掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									

―――け―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
232			卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					

―――こ―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
239						検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県
240	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	険	顕	験	鹸
241	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現	
242	絃	舷	言	諺	限					

―――こ―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
243	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
244	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
245	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
246	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
247	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功
248	効	勾	厚	口	向					
249		后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工
250	巧	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
251	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
252	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
253	紅	紘	絡	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
254	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
255	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫
256	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
257	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
258	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
259		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
260	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	

―――さ―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	查	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			

―――し―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
294		夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310		拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食
311	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審
312	心	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		

―――す―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320		澄	摺	寸						

―――せ―――

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
320						世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330		繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					
——そ——										
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
——た——										
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					
——ち——										
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵					
360		帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫	徴	懲	挑
361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶
362	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗
363	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳			
——つ——										
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	潰	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				
——て——										
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		
——と——										
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	吞	曇	鈍						

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
——な——										
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							
——に——										
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390	如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認			
——ぬ～の——										
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					
——は——										
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
——ひ——										
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								
——ふ——										
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				
——へ——										
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									
——ほ——										
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						
——ま——										
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	沫	迄	侭	繍
439	麿	万	慢	満						
440	漫	蔓								

Block 1

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
—み—										
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441		蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠
—む—										
441										務
442		夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘
—め—										
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
—も—										
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
—や—										
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									
—ゆ—										
449							愉	愈	油	癒
450		諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
—よ—										
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
—ら—										
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
—り—										
458									利	吏

Block 2

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
—る～れ—										
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
—ろ—										
469							蓮	連	錬	
470		呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路			
—わ—										
470				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								
476										
477										
478										
479										
480			弌	丐	丕	个	丱	丶	丿	乂
481	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	于	亞
482	亟	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄	仆
483	仂	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估	佛
484	佝	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩	佰
485	侑	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘	俛
486	俑	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪	倥
487	倅	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們	倆
488	偃	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬	偸
489	傀	傚	傅	傴	傲					

Block 3

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
490		僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僮
491	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚	儡
492	儐	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔
493	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉
494	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪
495	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛
496	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔
497	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剋	剌	剞
498	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍	劔	劒
499	剱	劈	劑	辨	辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁
500	勍	勗	勞	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸
501	勹	匆	匈	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣
502	匯	匱	匳	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍
503	凖	卞	卩	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠
504	厦	厥	厮	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼
505	燮	叮	叨	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭
506	吼	吮	吶	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟
507	呱	呷	呰	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐	咆
508	哇	咢	咸	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨	咫	哂
509	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏	唔	哽	哮
510	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌	售	啜	啅
511	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀	咯	喊	喟
512	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃	喩	喇	喨
513	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔	嘔	嗷	嘖
514	嗽	嘛	嗾	嗽	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤
515	嘯	噬	噪	嚆	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥
516	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎
517	囑	囓	囗	囮	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉	圈
518	國	圍	圓	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦	圷	圸
519	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡	坿	垉
520	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆	埔	埒
521	埓	堊	埖	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲	堡	塢
522	塋	塰	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹	墟	墫
523	墺	壞	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑	壗	壙
524	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹		
525										

Block 4

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
526	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹
527	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬
528	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘
529	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩					
530		奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨
531	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚
532	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媛
533	媾	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺
534	嫻	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃
535	孅	孀	子	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳
536	孵	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇
537	寉	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰
538	寶	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨
539	尸	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓				
540			屐	屏	孱	屬	屮	乢	屶	屹
541	岌	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼	岷	峅
542	岾	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌	峪	崋
543	崕	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢	崚	崙
544	崘	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶	嶇	嶄
545	嶂	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷	嶼	巉
546	巍	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已	巵	帋	帚
547	帙	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃	幀	幎	幗
548	幔	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并	幺	麼	广
549	庠	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏				
550		廖	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢	廡	廨	廩
551	廬	廱	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝	彜
552	弋	弑	弍	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌
553	彎	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷
554	徃	徂	彿	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘
555	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝
556	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛
557	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷	恟
558	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙
559	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚	悄	悛	悖	悗	悒
560		悧	悋	惡	悸	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽
561	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕	愆	惶	惷	愀	愃

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
562	慫	惶	愡	愀	惴	惺	愃	惚	惻	惱
563	愍	愎	慇	愒	愸	愧	慷	愿	愼	愬
564	愴	愽	愡	慄	慳	慘	慙	慚	慫	
565	愭	愽	愱	慱	慟	慓	憙	愻		
566	慸	憔	憚	憨	憖	憫	憮	懌	懊	
567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	懋	懻	懍	懦	懥
568	懲	懶	懺	懽	懿	懼	憺		戀	戈
569	戍	戌	戍	戔	戛					
570			戞	戡	截	戮	戲	戳	扁	扎
571	扞	扣	扛	扠	扡	扜	扶	找	抒	
572	抓	抖	抃	抔	抝	抇	抻	拏	拿	
573	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拂	拊	拋	拉	
574	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	拯	拧	捐	挾	
575	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	捶	掣	掏	
576	掉	掟	掄	捫	捩	掾	揩	揆	揣	
577	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦	搶
578	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕
579	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼					
580		據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擂	擱	擧	舉
581	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴	擲	
582	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攢	攤	攫	攴	
583	攵	收	攸	敖	敕	敍	敘	敞		
584	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫	斷
585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旛	无
586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴
587	昜	晏	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨	
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暎	
589	暨	暹	曉	暾	暼					
590		曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	曦	曩	曰	
591	曵	曷	朏	朖	朦	朧	霸	朮	朿	
592	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣	杤
593	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡	枅
594	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞	柝
595	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框	栩
596	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷	桿
597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
598			梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘
599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍					
600		楷	楜	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣	椥
601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椡	棆	楹
602	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
610		檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞
611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒
612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歸	歹	歿	
614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
620		沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
621	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤
622	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
623	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
624	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
625	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
626	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
627	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
628	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
629	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
630		漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯
631	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦
632	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬
633	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
634	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾
635	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳
636	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥
637	熙	熙	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	煩	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾
642	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犹	犲	狃
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻	
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		凱	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畛	畚	畩	畤
653	畦	畤	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴	
654	疊	疉	疊	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙
656	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳
657	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴
658	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨
659	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰					
660		癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
670			磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	稿
675	穡	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕
676	窘	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笑	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籖	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690			紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	綺	綣
692	綵	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟
693	綰	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊
694	縣	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦
695	縻	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖
696	繞	繙	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕
697	繽	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔
698	纖	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺				
699			罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
700	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
701	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
702	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
703	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
704	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
705										

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
706	聚	智	琘	聯	聳	聲	聰	聶	聵	聽
707	肀	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冑	肬
708	胂	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	脈	胯	胱	
709	脛	脩	胥	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	腼	膈	膊	膀	膂	腸	膕	腡
712	膣	腔	膓	膩	膰	膝	臃	膽	臀	
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臏	臘	臙	臚	臟	
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	舴	艙	艘
716	艚	艟	艤	艣	艨	艢	艫	舮	艮	艱
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	芡
718	苣	苛	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720		茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖
722	莫	莎	莇	莊	荼	莬	莵	荽	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730		蕚	蕪	蕹	蕀	蕗	薀	薔	薈	薊
731	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
732	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740		蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
742	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻
744	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞
745	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙	袢
746	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙
747	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊
748	褓	襃	褪	褡	褪	褫	襀	襄	褻	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
754	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誆	誂	誄
755	誨	誠	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂
756	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷
757	諞	諛	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謗
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫					
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	谿	豁	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躂	躄
772	躋	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躬	躰	軆
773	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邊	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈬
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔
793	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁
794	鑒	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵
795	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊
796	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻
797	閹	閾	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖
798	關	闡	闥	闢	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陷	陜	陟					
800		陝	陞	陝	陟	陛	陦	陷	隋	隧
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	隼	雎	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱	靹	鞅	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	齏	韲
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頷	頽	顆	
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餔	餘	餡	餝	餞
812	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅	饐
813	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭	駅

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
814	馮	馭	馼	駟	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鮐	鮹	鮹	鮷	鮷	鮹	鮷	鮷	鮹	鮹
825	鰄	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒
829	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鷁	鶻
832	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鷓	鷸	鷦	鷭
833	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈
834	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼	黽
837	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒	
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齲
839	齶	龕	龜	龠						
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙			

Weather Indicator List

■ **Basic Status**

☀	Clear skies (day)
☽	Clear skies (night)
☁	Cloudy
☂	Rain
☃	Snow
⚡	Thunder showers
0%	Chance of rain: 0%
10%	Chance of rain: 10%
20%	Chance of rain: 20%
30%	Chance of rain: 30%
40%	Chance of rain: 40%
50%	Chance of rain: 50%
60%	Chance of rain: 60%
70%	Chance of rain: 70%
80%	Chance of rain: 80%
90%	Chance of rain: 90%
100%	Chance of rain: 100%
▷	Then
╱	Partly/chance of

■ **Pollen Count**

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

■ **Cherry Blossom**

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall

■ **Fall Foliage**

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating

■ **Ultraviolet**

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

■ **Typhoon**

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

■ **Other**

	Heavy rain
	Gale
	Notification

Specifications

SoftBank 940SH

Weight*	130 g
Continuous Talk Time*	200 minutes (3G) 210 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time*	340 hours (3G) 300 hours (GSM) (clamshell closed)
Charging Time (power off)*	AC Charger: 140 minutes In-Car Charger: 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	51 x 111 x 16 mm (clamshell closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

*Approximate value.

● Above values calculated with battery installed and Backlight Brightness set to *Level:2*.
● Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
● Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with clamshell closed without calls or operations, in strong signal conditions without moving handset. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting set to *Off*.
● Talk Time/Standby Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.

● Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■ Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	Magnesium/Chemical conversion treatment, baking finish
Housing (side belt)	ABS resin/ Discontinuous deposition, acrylic UV painting
Housing (Keypad side)	Nylon resin/Acrylic UV painting
Housing (battery side), Battery Cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV painting
Display window, lens cover, Mobile Light cover, Earpiece cover	Acrylic resin
External Display panel	PC resin & acrylic resin
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys)	Aluminum, paint
Center Key, Mail Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Dictionary Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, TV & Text Key, Camera Key, key ornament sheets (Keypad side), camera ring	PC/UV curing resin
Clear/Back Key, Start Key, Keypad, ✳ Key, Power On/ Off Key, # Key	PC resin

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Side Keys (Volume Up Key, Volume Down Key, Keypad Lock & Camera Key)	PC resin/ Discontinuous deposition, acrylic UV painting
Infrared Port	PC resin (back: infrared permeable printing)
Memory Card Slot Cover, External Device Port Cover	Elastomeric resin/ Acrylic UV painting
Battery	PC & ABS resin
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws	SWCH16A/Black Ni plating
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

Accessory

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	770 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	37.2 x 37 x 5.4 mm (without protruding parts)

*Approximate value.

Basic Operations

■ Standby Shortcut

Savable Items	19 per sheet (shared with widgets)

Universal Operations, Etc.

■ Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	30,720 single-byte characters
Dictionary	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

■ Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

Calling

Dialed Numbers	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Ranking: 10 records
Received Calls	30 records
Answer Phone/Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Decoration Call	100 KB including 20 characters
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	
	Sent Messages	5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages)
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	220 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
PC Mail/S! Mail Subject		512 single-byte characters
PC Mail/S! Mail Message		Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters
SMS Message		160 single-byte alphanumerics
Auto Resend		2 times
Attachment		20 files or 2 MB*
Send Reservation		10 messages
Signature		256 single-byte characters
Recipient		20 numbers/addresses
Folder		20 folders (20 sort keys each)
Chat Folders	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)

Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses Reply Message: 256 single-byte characters per mode
Anti Spam Measures	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

*Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

■ PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

Internet

Download (Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser)	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page 10 MB (100 MB via Keitai Wi-Fi) for progressive downloads
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
Download (Direct Browser)*	JPEG Images	5,000 KB
	Flash® Files	2 MB

*1 MB each for files other than JPEG images and Flash® files. (Some media files are playable beyond 1 MB.)

History	300 pages for Yahoo! Keitai 300 pages between PC Site Browser and Direct Browser
URL Entry Log	10 URLs
Bookmarks* & Saved Pages	100 pages for Yahoo! Keitai 100 pages between PC Site Browser and Direct Browser
Tab	3 tabs at one time
Input Memory	20 entries
Streaming History	20 URLs
RSS Feeds	30 entries (60 KB per entry)

*Folders are counted as pages.

Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)	
Recording Time (example)	Handset	Approximately 70 minutes
	Memory Card	Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)	
Split File	99 portions per file	
Time Shift Recording	30 minutes	
Reservation List	5 entries (24 hours each on 1 GB or larger Memory Card)	

Camera & Imaging

■ Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	12.1 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

■ Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 25x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	12M	3000 x 4000
	8M	2448 x 3264
	5M	1944 x 2592
	3M	1536 x 2048
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	1.2M*	960 x 1280
	Wallpaper	480 x 854
	VGA	480 x 640
	QVGA	240 x 320
Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	
File Format	JPEG	
Memory	Approximately 49 files (at 12M, High Quality) on handset with no other files	
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm	
Background Save	3 files	
Portrait Auto Focus	VGA or larger	

*Rapid Shooting Camera only.

■ Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 5.7x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	864 x 480 (Wide)
		640 x 480 (VGA)
		320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
	For Message	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)

File Format	3GP	
Recording Capacity per Shot	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	2 MB or 295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	
Still Image Capture	3 images	
Recording Pause Supported	QVGA or larger (Extended Video sizes only)	

*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

■ Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (480 x 854) Power On/Off (480 x 854) Incoming Call (320 x 320) Alarm (480 x 208) Pictogram (96 x 96) VGA (480 x 640) QVGA (240 x 320) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

Video & Music

Supported Formats	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)

All Music List	Music	Shows up to 350 files each
	Chaku-Uta®	
	WMA	
	SD AUDIO	Shows up to 999 files

S! Applications & Widgets

■ S! Applications

| **Memory** | 100 items or 220 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder) |
| **Remote Control** | Approximately 5 m |

■ Mobile Widget

| **Savable Items** | 4 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, others: 3) per sheet x 4 sheets |

Handy Extras

■ PIM/Life

Calendar*/Tasks	Schedule: 1,000 entries Tasks: 300 entries Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off	Approximately 30 minutes
Calculator	999,999,999,999
Expenses Memo	30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics

*Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of September 2009.

■ Clock/Gauge

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters
Pedometer	Today's Walking	Steps: 99,999
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 71.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 179.9 km
		Fat burned: 999.9 g
	Log	2 years
		Daily view: 9,999 steps per hour
		Weekly view: 99,999 steps per day
	Accumulated Data	All Days: 999 days
		Steps: 99,999,999
		Time: 99,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 99,999.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 999,999.9 km
		Fat burned: 999,999.9 g
	Average	Steps: 99,999
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 71.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 179.9 km
		Fat burned: 999.9 g
S! GPS Navi	My Location	50 entries

■ Doc./Rec.

Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad	500 entries (8,192 characters each)
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 20 minutes (message size limit: 2 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji
Scan Text	256 characters

Entertainment

■ S! Quick News

| **Savable Items** | 1 item for Special
5 items between News Flash and General |

■ e-Books

| **Text Copy** | 20 characters |

■ S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

■ S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Title	16 characters	
Blog Settings (Mail)	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser)	URL for Posting	1,024 characters
	URL for Viewing	1,024 characters

Data Folder

Memory	220 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and S! Appli Library)

Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/letters)

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

Connectivity & File Backup

■ Wi-Fi

Profile	10 entries
Authentication Method	Open System, Shared Key, WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA/WPA2-PSK Auto
Encryption Method	No Authentication, WEP, TKIP, AES, TKIP/AES Auto
WEP Key	4 keys

■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm
IrSS Transfer (JPEG images)	Receive 2,500 KB or less; send 5,000 KB or less (after resizing)	

■ Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.1
Supported Profiles	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-Up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Range	Within 10 m
Device Search	16 devices
Pairing	32 devices
Device Name	16 characters
Printing	JPEG/PNG images

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 synchronization records

Network

Add Network	5 Networks Country/Network code: 3 digits Name: 25 single-byte characters

Reference URLs

■ **SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/

■ **S! Addressbook Back-up**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ **Messaging Basics**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html

■ **Custom Handset Address**
https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html

■ **Yahoo! Keitai**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html

■ **Ichi Navi**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ **Secure Remote Lock**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ **microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility**
From PC (Japanese)
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/

■ **Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders**
From PC (Japanese)
http://www.sharp.co.jp/bd/spec/index.html

■ **SVG-T**
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html

■ **Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting**
From PC
http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/
From Handset (Japanese)
http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

■ **SOFTBANK TELECOM Corp. (BB mobilepoint)**
From PC
http://tm.softbank.jp/english/consumer/wlan/index.html

Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure				Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP			Still images in DCIM
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents		SD Local Contents
		Mail		Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			CSI	Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	S! Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art	Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs·Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
			Widget	Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)
			WMAudio	WMA files for Media Player (WMA)
		SH_Folder		Application management files
		Utility		Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE		Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.
SD_AUDIO				SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)

Menu List

Messaging

Function	Refer to
Received Msg.	P.5-12
Create Message	P.5-4
Retrieve New Msg.	P.5-23
Drafts	P.5-29
Templates	P.5-22
Sent Messages	P.5-12
Unsent Messages	P.5-29
Chat Folders	P.5-15
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.5-23
	Retrieve All	P.5-23
	Delete All	P.5-27
	Mailbox Volume	P.5-29
Create New SMS		P.5-7
Settings	Address Settings	P.5-3
	General Settings	P.5-30
	S! Mail Settings	P.5-32
	PC Mail Settings	P.5-18
	SMS Settings	P.5-34
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.5-20
	Set Mail Group	P.5-16
Memory Status		P.5-26

■ Settings: General Settings

Function		Refer to
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.5-30
	Reply to Settings	P.5-30
	Reply With Text	P.5-30
	Auto Reply	P.5-25
	Set Quick Reply	P.5-25
	Auto Resend	P.5-30
	Sending Status	P.5-30
	Restrictions Setting	P.5-8
Receive	Message Notice	P.5-31
	Link to Feeling	P.5-31
	Animation View	P.5-31
Anti Spam Measures		P.5-14
Report Spam		P.5-30
Scroll Unit		P.5-30
Message List View		P.5-30
Address View		P.5-30
Received Msg. View		P.5-30
Sent Msg. View		P.5-30
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.5-30
	Sent Messages	P.5-30

■ Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function		Refer to
Message DL		P.5-11
Signature		P.5-20
Picture Appearance		P.5-32
Auto Play File	Pictures	P.5-32
	Sounds	P.5-32
Create Msg. Size		P.5-32
Send File Settings		P.5-32
Picture Auto Resize		P.5-32

■ Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.5-18
PC Mail DL	P.5-33
Check New Mail	P.5-33
Word wrap	P.5-33

■ Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.5-34
Message Center	P.5-34
Char-code	P.5-34

Appendix

17

Yahoo!

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
Menu List	P.6-3
Bookmarks	P.6-9
Saved Pages	P.6-9
Web Search	P.6-12
Enter URL	P.6-4
History	P.6-4
PC Site Browser	P.6-5
Direct Browser	P.6-5
Browser Settings	P.6-13

■ PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.6-5
Bookmarks	P.6-9
Saved Pages	P.6-9
Web Search	P.6-12
Enter URL	P.6-5
History	P.6-5
RSS Feed	P.6-10
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
Direct Browser	P.6-5

	Function	Refer to
PC Site Browser Settings	Font Size	P.6-13
	Scroll Settings	P.6-14
	Cursor Settings	P.6-13
	Downloads	P.6-13
	Memory Operation	P.6-11
	Security Settings	P.6-18
	Download to	P.6-13
	Initialized Browser	P.6-18
	Reset Settings	P.6-18
	Warning Message	P.6-14
	Zoom Factor	P.6-13
	Softkey Area	P.6-5

■ Direct Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.6-5
Bookmarks	P.6-9
Saved Pages	P.6-9
Web Search	P.6-12
Enter URL	P.6-5
History	P.6-5
RSS Feed	P.6-10
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
PC Site Browser	P.6-5

	Function	Refer to
Set Direct Browser	Font Size	P.6-13
	Scroll Settings	P.6-14
	Cursor Settings	P.6-13
	Downloads	P.6-13
	Memory Operation	P.6-11
	Security Settings	P.6-18
	Download to	P.6-13
	Initialized Browser	P.6-18
	Reset Settings	P.6-18
	Zoom Factor	P.6-13
	Softkey Area	P.6-5
	Direct Browser Lock	P.6-14
	Proxy Setting	P.6-14
	Homepage Settings	P.6-14
	Search Page	P.6-14

■ Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.6-13
Scroll Unit	P.6-14
Cursor Settings	P.6-13
Downloads	P.6-13
Memory Operation	P.6-11
Security Settings	P.6-18
Download to	P.6-13
Initialized Browser	P.6-18
Reset Settings	P.6-18

S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	**P.10-2**
Osaifu-Keitai	**P.11-15**
Notification History	**P.10-2**
Settings	**P.10-7**
Information	**P.10-7**

■ Settings

Function		Refer to
Application Volume		**P.10-6**
Backlight		**P.10-7**
Vibration		**P.10-7**
Synchronization		**P.10-7**
Notification Setting		**P.10-7**
Calls & Alarms		**P.10-6**
Screensaver	**Switch On/Off**	**P.10-6**
	Activation Time	**P.10-6**
	Stop Auto Start	**P.10-6**
Surround		**P.10-6**
Set to Default		**P.10-7**
Memory All Clear		**P.10-7**

Entertainment

Function		Refer to
S! Information Channel/ Weather	**What's New**	**P.12-3**
	Back Issue	**P.12-3**
	Registration/Cancel	**P.12-3**
	Get Latest Contents	**P.12-14**
	Notification	**P.12-14**
	Weather Indicator	**P.12-3**
S! Quick News		**P.12-2**
Free Contents	**Tada-Melody**	**P.12-4**
	Tada-Deco	**P.12-4**
	Tada-Hon	**P.12-4**
	Tada-Komi	**P.12-4**
	Tada-Game	**P.12-4**
	Tada-Utaban	**P.12-4**
S! Contents Store		**P.12-4**
Media Player	**Music**	**P.9-5**
	Videos	**P.9-6**
	Streaming	**P.6-4**
	MTP Mode	**P.9-4**
S! Friend's Status		**P.12-6**
S! Circle Talk		**P.12-9**
Near chat		**P.12-11**
Blog Tool		**P.12-12**
Digital Media Viewer		**P.12-5**
BookSurfing		**P.12-5**
e-Book Viewer		**P.12-5**

■ S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		**P.12-15**
Manual Update		**P.12-3**
Settings	**Standby Setting**	**P.12-15**
	Weather Notif.	**P.12-15**
	Icon Update	**P.12-15**

■ S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		**P.12-2**
Settings	**Automatic Update**	**P.12-14**
	Show Image	**P.12-14**
	Check Schedule	**P.12-14**
	Change Skin	**P.12-14**
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	**P.12-14**

■ Media Player: Music

Function		Refer to
Last Played Music		**P.9-8**
My Music		**P.9-5**
SD AUDIO		**P.9-5**
WMA		**P.9-5**
Download Music		**P.9-4**
Settings	**Sound Effects**	**P.9-8**
	Playback Mode	**P.9-8**
	Music Illumination	**P.9-8**
	⑧Sound Output	**P.9-8**
	Delete All WMA	**P.9-10**

Appendix

17

■ **Media Player: Videos**

Function	Refer to
Last Played Video	P.9-8
My Videos	P.9-6
Recorder Contents	P.9-6
SD VIDEO	P.9-6
Download Videos	P.9-4
Settings	Playback Mode	P.9-8
	Backlight	P.9-9
	Display Size	P.9-9
	Sound Effects	P.9-9
	Web Link Setting	P.9-9
	&Sound Output	P.9-8

Camera

Function	Refer to
Easy Auto Camera	P.8-3
Pro Auto Camera	P.8-5
Quick Camera	P.8-6
Rapid Shooting Camera	P.8-8
Three-Shot Camera	P.8-10
Fine Video Camera	P.8-16
Video Camera for Mail	P.8-17
Various Cameras	P.8-8
Album	P.8-18
Scan Barcode	P.11-34
Scan Card	P.11-36
Kanji Grabber	P.11-38
Review	P.8-21
Set Camera Key	P.8-28

■ **Photo Camera (Example: Pro Auto Camera)**

Function	Refer to
Switch Camera	P.8-6
Detect Personal	P.8-14
Self-timer	P.8-28
Picture Size	P.8-28
Focus Setting	P.8-28
Shutter Setting	Egao level	P.8-29
	Shutter Mode	P.8-29
	Shutter Sound	P.8-29
	Set Remote Shutter	P.8-28
Settings	Picture Quality	P.8-29
	ISO Sensitivity	P.8-29
	White Balance	P.8-29
	Exposure	P.8-29
	Shake Reducing	P.8-29
	Long Exposure	P.8-29
	Display Setting	P.8-29
	Set Send Key	P.8-29
Album		P.8-18
Save Setting	Save Pictures to	P.8-29
	Auto Save	P.8-29
	Background Save	P.8-29
Scene		P.8-8
Help		P.8-28
Mobile Light		P.8-29

■ **Video Camera**

Function	Refer to
Switch Camera	P.8-17
Simple Setting	P.8-16
Self-timer	P.8-30
Record Time/Size	P.8-31
Focus Setting	P.8-30
Shake Reducing	P.8-31
Settings	Video Quality	P.8-31
	Exposure	P.8-30
	Microphone	P.8-31
Review		P.8-21
Save Setting	Save Videos to	P.8-31
	Auto Save	P.8-31
	Video Encode	P.8-31
	Audio Encode	P.8-31
	Picture Setting	P.8-31
Display Size		P.8-31
Help		P.8-30
Mobile Light		P.8-31

Videos/Music

Function	Refer to
Videos/Music	P.9-2

Appendix

17

17-28

Tools

■ PIM/Life

■ PIM/Life: Osaifu-Keitai

■ Clock/Gauge

■ Doc./Rec.

■ Connectivity

■ Connectivity: Wi-Fi

■ Connectivity: Bluetooth

Appendix

17

Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.8-22
DCIM	P.14-2
Ring Songs·Tones	P.11-33
S! Appli	P.10-2
Widget	P.10-3
Music	P.14-2
Videos	P.14-2
Lifestyle-Appli	P.11-15
Books	P.14-2
Customized Screen	P.3-4
Status Templates	P.14-2
Decoration Call	P.4-16
Flash®	P.14-2
Other Documents	P.14-2
Memory Status	P.14-2

Widget

Function		Refer to
Widget Store		P.10-3
Widget Contents		P.10-3
Widget History		P.10-8
Settings	**Remove Contents**	P.10-5
	Remove All Contents	P.10-9
	Auto Refresh	P.10-8
	AutoConnect Abroad	P.10-8
	Set Use Abroad	P.10-8
	Notification Setting	P.10-8
	Cookies	P.10-8
	Delete Cookies	P.10-8

TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.7-4
TV Player	P.7-9
TV-Image Folder	P.7-6
TV Link	P.7-14
TV Listing	P.7-7
Familink Remote	P.1-3
Reservation List	P.7-10
Settings	P.7-13
Recorder Contents	P.7-16

■ Settings

Function		Refer to
TV Alarm		P.7-17
Broadcast Data	**Set Recording**	P.7-15
	Image Location	P.7-15
	Notify Connection	P.7-14
	Location	P.7-14
	Manufacture Number	P.7-14
	Delete StationData	P.7-14
Screen Size(Portrait)		P.7-12
Display Icon		P.7-13
Sound Output		P.7-13
⑧Sound Output		P.7-13
Set Call Time Shift		P.7-15
Calls & Alarms		P.7-13
TV Reserve Prior		P.7-17
Save Recording to		P.7-15
Auto Exit	**Auto Exit Time**	P.7-13
	Close Action	P.7-13
Smooth Mode		P.7-12

Phone

Function		Refer to
Phone Book		P.3-18
Add New Entry		P.3-18
Information		P.1-7
Call Log		P.4-8
Play Messages		P.4-4
Call Voicemail		P.4-13
S! Addressbook Back-up		P.15-19
My Details		P.2-22
Set Category		P.3-19
Mail Groups		P.5-16
Speed Dial/Mail		P.4-7
Ph.Book Settings	**Sort Entries**	P.3-20
	Select Phone Book	P.3-25
	Save New Entry	P.3-25
	New Number Prompt	P.3-23
	Vertical Display	P.3-23
	Horizontal Display	P.3-23
Call Log Setting		P.4-17
Manage Entries	**Copy All**	P.3-25
	Memory Status	P.3-25
	Change Mode(All)	P.3-25
	Delete All	P.3-25

Settings

■ Sound/Display

Function	Refer to
Mode Settings	P.2-28
Display	P.16-3
Customized Screen	P.3-4
Sounds & Alerts	P.3-5
Date & Time	P.16-2
言語選択 (Language)	P.16-3
Ringer Output	P.16-6
Earpiece Volume	P.4-15
Change Menu	P.2-9

■ Sound/Display: Display

Function		Refer to
Wallpaper		P.3-3
System Graphics		P.16-3
VeilView		P.2-29
Display Effects		P.16-3
Font Settings		P.3-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.16-4
	Show Widget	P.16-4
	Show Operator Name	P.16-4
	Pedometer	P.11-47
Vivid Mode		P.16-3
Mini Battery		P.2-29
Greeting Message		P.16-3
External Display		P.1-12
Backlight		P.16-3
Display Saving		P.16-3
Caller Display		P.16-3
Dial Number		P.16-3

■ Sound/Display: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.16-5
Ringtone/videos	P.3-5
Machi-Uta	P.3-21
System Sounds	P.16-6
Vibration	P.3-5
Set Illumination	P.16-4
Any Key Answer	P.16-5
Surround	P.16-6

■ Sound/Display: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.16-2
Time Correction	P.16-2
Daylight Saving	P.16-2
Set Time Zone	P.16-2
Clock/Calendar	P.16-4
World Clock	P.11-22
Alarms	P.11-8
Set Holiday	P.11-39
Time Format	P.16-2
Date Format	P.16-2
Calendar Format	P.16-2

■ Phone/📱

Function		Refer to
User Dictionary		P.3-12
Set Key Shortcut		P.2-13
Viewer Position	Move Settings	P.2-18
	Set Appli	P.2-27
	Set Bookmark	P.2-27
Motion Control		P.2-17

Function		Refer to
Vector Pad Settings	Scroll Speed	P.2-26
	Launch Spinguru Menu by	P.2-26
	Jog Speed	P.2-26
	Correct Vector Pad	P.2-26
Touch Panel	Touch Reaction	P.2-26
	Keypad Lock	P.2-28
	Correct Touch Panel	P.2-8
Set Key Light		P.16-4
Double Number	Switch On/Off	P.2-23
	Double Mode	P.2-25
	Password Entry	P.2-29
	Mode Name	P.2-29
	Reject By Line	P.2-29
	Show Missed	P.2-29
	Packet Warning	P.2-29
	Send Priority	P.2-29
Video/Music Menu Updates		P.9-2
Memory Card		P.14-6
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.15-25
	Backup Selected Items	P.15-18
	Restore All Items	P.15-25
	Restore Selected Items	P.15-18
	Settings/Manage	P.15-25
Locks		P.13-2
Software Update		P.17-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.16-8
	Reset All	P.16-8

Appendix

17

17-31

■ **Phone/🗂: Memory Card**

Function		Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.8-27
	Settings	P.8-32
	Check Settings	P.8-27
	Reset Settings	P.8-32
SD Local Contents		P.14-9
Format Card		P.14-6
Memory Status		P.14-2

■ **Phone/🗂: Locks**

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.13-2
Function Lock	P.13-2
IP Service Setting	P.16-7
Function Control	P.13-4
Application Lock	P.13-3
History Lock	P.13-3
Show Secret Data	P.13-3
Set Lock Message	P.13-5
Chg. Handset Code	P.2-21
Administrator Setting	P.2-21

■ **Call**

Function		Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.4-9
	Data Counter	P.4-18
	Call Time Counter	P.4-17
	Minute Minder	P.4-17
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.4-4
	Answer Time	P.4-14
	Outgoing Message	P.4-14
	Volume	P.4-14
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.4-13
	Diverts	P.4-12
	Cancel All	P.4-13
	Status	P.4-19
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.4-20
	Incoming Picture	P.4-20
	Outgoing Picture	P.4-20
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.4-20
	Backlight	P.4-20
	Loudspeaker	P.4-20
	Mute Microphone	P.4-20
	Remote Monitor	P.4-14
Show My Number		P.4-20
⎣out⎦ Missed Calls		P.4-13
Int'l Calling	Int'l Prefix	P.4-15
	Country Codes	P.4-15
	Roaming Dial Assistant	P.4-15
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.4-19
	Restrict Destinations	P.4-10
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.4-20
	Reject Numbers	P.4-18
	Change NW Password	P.4-19

Function		Refer to
Decoration Call	Switch On/Off	P.4-16
	Play in Receiving	P.4-16
	Notice	P.4-17
Auto Answer		P.4-20
Call Waiting		P.4-19

■ **Network**

Function	Refer to
Select Network	P.16-7
Select Service	P.16-7
Re-search Signal	P.16-7
Offline Mode	P.2-20
Retrieve NW Info	P.16-7
Network Info	P.16-7
Wi-Fi	P.15-3
External Device	P.16-7

Index

Appendix

17

Objectives

Appendix

17

Warranty & Service

■ **Warranty**

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

● Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.

● Read contents and keep in a safe place.

● The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ **After-Sales Services**

See **P.17-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank Mobile for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.17-42**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

● Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.

● Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-42**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

● SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.

● Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial +**81**-**3**-**5351**-**3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

SoftBank 940SH User Guide

December 2009, First Edition
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 940SH
Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION

Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.